German

October 5, 2014

Contents

Contents

Contents

1 German

2 Main Contents

- Introduction[1]
- Lessons
  - Level one lessons (Introductory lessons / einführende Lektionen)[2]
  - Level two lessons (Grundlegende Lektionen)[3]
  - Level three lessons (Zwischen-Lektionen)[4]
  - Level four lessons (Erweiterte Lektionen)[5]
  - Level five lessons (Review lessons / Überprüfungs-Lektionen)[6]
- Grammar[7]
- Appendices (Anhänge)[8]
- Contributors[9]
- GFDL[10]

---

3 Introduction

A Textbook on Five Levels

The question arose early in the development of this textbook as to precisely who would be the target audience. Although intended to be a "beginning" textbook on German, many felt that the early lessons were too difficult for younger students with very limited or no experience with German and, perhaps more importantly, limited skills in English grammar. For this reason a textbook on three levels was conceived. Beginning German[1] (**Level I**) puts more emphasis on building vocabulary around subject matter interesting and useful to young students. Basic German[2] (**Level II**) emphasises grammar, and assumes a greater knowledge of English grammar more typical of an older high school or a college student. If you are just beginning to learn German or attempting to teach yourself, you may wish to try both approaches and see which works better for you, since some people require a strong structural approach to learning a new language while others find this "structure" only impedes progress by adding another layer of complexity. Intermediate German[3] (**Level III**), which requires even more knowledge of English, is for college students, preferably for sophomores or juniors. With even more complex lessons, grammar and vocabulary comes Advanced German[4] (**Level IV**), which with the most complex and difficult parts of the German language, is for late college students (Seniors) and college graduates. The last level, which is a review level, but also has cultural facts and the history of the German language, is Reviewed German.[5] (**Level V**). An existing, separate text, **German**/**Grammar**[6], may eventually be merged into the lesson modules or developed into useful appendices as a grammar reference. At present, however, German Grammar is an expanding, significant contribution to the textbook; it provides an important reference on German language grammar rules useful to the student working through any of the three levels.

3.1 The German Language

German (*Deutsch*) is a member of the western group of the Germanic language[7]s. It is spoken primarily in Germany, Austria, the majority of Switzerland, Liechtenstein, Luxembourg, the Südtirol (South Tyrol) region of Italy, the Opole Voivodship of Poland, the eastern part of Belgium, parts of Romania, the Alsace (Elsass) region of France and parts of Denmark. Additionally, several former colonial possessions of these countries, such as

---

1   http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/German%2FLevel%20I
2   http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/German%2FLevel%20II
3   http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/German%2FLevel%20III
4   http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/German%2FLevel%20IV
5   http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/German%2FLevel%20V
6   http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/German%2FGrammar
7   http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Germanic%20language

Namibia in Africa, have sizable German-speaking populations. There are German-speaking minorities in several eastern European countries including Russia, and in the United States as well as countries in South America like Brazil, Argentina and Chile. Over 120 million people speak German as their native language. German is the third most popular foreign language taught worldwide, and the second most popular in Europe. Continue reading about the German language[8].

3.2 German and English

If you are an English speaker unfamiliar with German, you may be surprised to learn that English and German are closely related languages and share many words that are very similar. Such words are called cognate[9]s. This is particularly true for everyday words in English that are Anglo-Saxon (that is, Germanic) in origin. Consider the following list of English words followed by their German counterparts:

arm ˜ *der Arm*

book ˜ *das Buch*

cat ˜ *die Katze*

father ˜ *der Vater*

finger ˜ *der Finger*

wagon ˜ *der Wagen*

house ˜ *das Haus*

hand ˜ *die Hand*

June ˜ *der Juni*

man ˜ *der Mann*

mother ˜ *die Mutter*

mouse ˜ *die Maus*

name ˜ *der Name*

son ˜ *der Sohn*

garden ˜ *der Garten*

lamp ˜ *die Lampe*

bush ˜ *der Busch*

baker ˜ *der Bäcker*

net ˜ *das Netz*

---

8   http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/German%20language
9   http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/cognate

storm ~ *der Sturm*

hat ~ *der Hut*

fire ~ *das Feuer*

grass ~ *das Gras*

fish ~ *der Fisch*

kindergarten ~ *der Kindergarten*

Some German words have the same origin as their English counterparts but the meaning has changed:

worry ≠ *würgen* (strangle)

kind ≠ *das Kind* (child)

- **Audio**: OGG[10] (308KB) ~ *Hear these words*

Of course, even words whose spelling is no different in English and German may be pronounced quite differently. But in reading German, you will see the connections between these languages, even in many of the "small" words (the above examples are all nouns). For example:

This week, my father is with my brother in the city.

Diese Woche ist mein Vater mit meinem Bruder in der Stadt.

- **Audio**: OGG[11] (87KB) ~ *Hear these sentences*

Note also the general similarity of sentence structure with English. The only real difference in the German is that the verb is moved forward in the sentence. However, there are many German sentences in which a verb form is the last word in the sentence.

Unfortunately, while German is perhaps the easiest "foreign" language for an English speaker to learn, meanings of words that are spelled similarly are not always identical. These "false friends[12]" can be confusing for the beginner. Further, German is a more structured language than English, with a more complex grammar, and it will become apparent as you learn German that you will also learn more about English language structure than you might ever recall from your high school English classes. For a quick listing of similarities and differences between English and German, read the Introduction to Level I[13].

3.3 Vocabulary and Grammar

In learning to read or speak any language with which you have minimal acquaintance (that is, are not a native speaker of), the two aspects to be mastered are vocabulary and grammar. Acquiring vocabulary is a "simple" matter of memorization. For the language(s) we learn

---

10   http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/Media%3AEnglish-german%20words.ogg
11   http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/Media%3AExample%20sentence.ogg
12   Chapter 90 on page 353
13   Chapter 6 on page 17

as children, this process is so transparent that we have trouble conceiving of the importance of having a large vocabulary. By the age of conscious recognition of our communicating with others through speech, we have already learned the meaning of thousands of words. Even words we have trouble defining, we readily understand their use in conversation. This process can be "reactivated," as it were, by immersion in a second language: a method of learning a new language by moving to a place where that language is spoken and having to get around and live without use of one's native tongue.

The student of German language, if not residing in a German-speaking environment, must put forth substantial effort to learning words, including their meaning, their pronunciation and their usage in common sentences. Be sure to "learn"—commit to memory—all of the vocabulary words in each lesson as they are presented. Early lessons have simple sentences because it is assumed that the student's vocabulary is limited. But throughout the text, more complex discourses (often as photo captions) are included to introduce the student to regular German in use. It may be helpful to translate these using a German-English dictionary (access to one is a must; see Appendix 5[14] for on-line options). Other sources of German, such as newspapers, magazines, web sites, etc., can also be useful in building vocabulary and developing a sense of how German words are put together. The German Wikipedia[15] provides an ever expanding source of German language articles that can be used for this purpose. Further, a German version of the Wikibooks project—a library of textbooks in German—is available at German Wikibooks[16].

German grammar is more complex than, but sufficiently similar to, English that "reading" German is possible with minimal vocabulary in the sense that the student should generally recognize the parts of a sentence. With a good dictionary or an online translator, an English speaker can usually translate a German sentence close to correctly. However, to accurately speak and understand German, you must learn how each word functions in a sentence. There are eight basic grammatical functions: **case**, **gender**, **number**, **tense**, **person**, **mood**, **voice**, and **comparison**. How words "signal" these functions is an important aspect of learning a new language. English speakers should know all of these functions and the signals used in English, but it is often the situation that you know perfectly well how to speak English, without understanding much about word-functions and signals. For this reason, this textbook incorporates considerable detail on grammar, including both English and German grammar. The reference book *English*[17] at *Wikibooks* may be consulted for additional help. When we say German is more complex than English, what we really mean is that the signals used in German are different from and more numerous than those used by English.

3.4 Pronunciation

A guide to the pronunciation[18] of German is provided. You should become familiar with this page early on, and refer to it often. Nothing can replace learning a language from

---

14   Chapter 88 on page 341
15   http://de.wikipedia.org/
16   http://de.wikibooks.org/
17   http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/English
18   Chapter 84 on page 325

a native speaker, but the text is liberally sprinkled with audio files providing the student with valuable input from hearing spoken German. Analyze the spoken words carefully. The pronunciation guide can only closely, not exactly, convey how German words should be pronounced. And of course, German (like English) has a number of dialects distinguished by differences in pronunciation.

Help in the pronunciation of individual words can be found by accessing the sound files of either of the online dictionaries, links to which are given in the German websites[19] appendix.

3.5 Layout of Lessons

This textbook is intended as a beginning course in the German language for English speakers. Early lessons emphasize conversational subjects and gradually introduce German grammatical concepts and rules. In addition, sound files accompany appropriate parts of each lesson. Although the **basic lessons** (*Grundlegende Lektionen*) are presented at about the (US) high school level, beginners (including those attempting to learn German outside of a course structure) are expected to work through several basic lessons up to an indicated point, when review is suggested along with additional study. The basic way lessons go to other lessons is very simple and direct:

- Lesson 1 > 2 > 3 > 4 > and on to the end of the text.

3.6 Layout within Lessons

The following subheadings or categories are offered within the lessons (Level II and above):

1. One or more conversation (***Gespräch***) or story (***Geschichte***) pieces in German alone to illustrate the language in use.
2. Study material (***Lernen***) in English and German to present lists of conceptually related words.
3. One or more grammar (***Grammatik***) lessons covering elements of German grammar, with illustrations drawn from the conversation, story, or study materials.
4. A list of words (***Vokabeln***) and phrases introduced in the lesson, above that point, usually in the conversation, story, or study presentations. Words and phrases are arranged alphabetically within groups, and the groups are presented in the following order: 1) nouns, 2) phrases, 3) verbs, and 4) all other words. A guide to pronunciation of the words presented is consolidated within Appendix 1[20]. However, in each *Vokabeln*, nouns stressed on other than the first syllable (the general rule in German) are indicated by bolding of the stressed syllable (e.g., *Biologie*). Note that the English translation of all German words in a *Vokabeln* is the best equivalent for the lesson example. The lesson *Vokabeln* is not a dictionary, but a quick reference for translation purposes. For this reason, verbs are not translated into a typical English infinitive form with a preceding particle, "to".

---

19   Chapter 88 on page 341
20   Chapter 84 on page 325

5. A list of additional, related words or phrases (***Andere Wörter***; advanced lessons only) that relate to, but are not included in, the vocabulary presented in the basic and advanced lessons.
6. English sentences and other material to be translated by the student into German (***Übersetzung***). These are numbered and a matching answer sheet is linked to this category. The student should write out the German using material from the lesson (and previous lessons) before checking their work against the answer list.

3.7 The Student and the Lesson

Each level of the text is designed to constitute a course of study in the German language. For any level selected, each lesson should be read thoroughly and mastered before moving on. Substantial text in German is included and the student should read all of it, not once, but multiple times. At Levels II and III, complete translations into English are included only in selected places. Most of this text must be translated by the student using his or her acquired vocabulary and the vocabulary presented at the bottom of each lesson. As the German text is read (preferably out loud), the student must succeed in gaining an understanding of the meaning of each sentence, and of the role each word plays in establishing that meaning. To the beginner, there will seem to be many words in a German sentence that are out of place or even redundant or unnecessary. These add subtleties to the language that will make sense eventually. But it is important to experience these subtleties from the very beginning.

Continue to the level one introduction[21].

---

21   Chapter 6 on page 17

4 LEVEL ONE LESSONS

5 Contents

---

1   Chapter 6 on page 17
2   Chapter 3.3 on page 9
3   Chapter 3.3 on page 9
4   Chapter 3.3 on page 9
5   Chapter 3.3 on page 9
6   Chapter 3.3 on page 9
7   Chapter 3.3 on page 9
8   Chapter 3.3 on page 9
9   Chapter 3.3 on page 9
10   Chapter 3.3 on page 9
11   Chapter 3.3 on page 9
12   Chapter 3.3 on page 9
13   Chapter 3.3 on page 9
14   Chapter 3.3 on page 9
15   Chapter 3.3 on page 9
16   Chapter 3.3 on page 9
17   Chapter 3.3 on page 9
18   Chapter 3.3 on page 9
19   Chapter 3.3 on page 9
20   Chapter 3.3 on page 9
21   Chapter 3.3 on page 9

6 Lesson 1.00 - Introduction

I.0: Introduction

Welcome to Level I German!

Level I is aimed at junior high and high school students. However, it can also be used by others just beginning to learn to speak or read German.

The goal of Level I German is to introduce the basics of the German language without overwhelming students. Therefore, the vocabulary is formatted for translating from English (which the students know) into German.

Although Level II is aimed at students and people who are a bit proficient after Level I, still, English translation will be used, so as to ease the learning. It helps because, at times while learning a new language, even with basic understanding, the words are above normal understanding level, and thus require a "sub" assistance.

6.1 German and English

German and English are quite close to each other, and are called language sisters or, more formally, *cognate languages*. Both belong to the Germanic branch of the Indo-European language family. Here are some major similarities:

- Both languages use the Latin alphabet.
- Normally, sentences follow Subject-Verb-Object order.
- Questions have Verb-Subject-Object order or Adverb-Verb-Subject-Object order.
- There are contractions (e.g., *isn't*) in both German and English.
- Many words share the same roots, such as *word* and *Wort*, or *house* and *Haus*.
- Many words are spelled almost the same way in English and German; for example, *Text*, *Zoo*, *Handball*, *Motor*, *Bus*, *Park*, *Position*, or *Garage*.
- *Kindergarten* (early school grade) is an English word borrowed directly from German, with a slight change of meaning from its original sense of daycare or nursery school.

As you can see, German is quite similar to English. There are, however, differences:

- German has more letters than and different pronunciations from English.
- In German the verb is sometimes the last word of a sentence.
- German has more verb forms than English.
- German is the only known written language where *every* noun is capitalized, whether or not it is a proper noun.
- The word *ich* (*I*) is only capitalized if it is the first word of the sentence.

- German has three different words for *you*.
- Adjectives have different endings based on the noun they are modifying in German.
- German does not have any Present Continuous tense, only Present tense.

However, German is still one of the easiest languages for English speakers to learn. The differences will be tackled over the course of the lessons.

6.2 How to Use this Level of the German Textbook

The lessons are meant to be taken in order. You should read and review the German dialogs as often as possible. Many of the dialogs come with audio recordings by native speakers. These recordings are invaluable to learn the German pronunciation. If there is a recording, you can do several kinds of exercises:

- Read the German dialog and translate it to English with the help of the vocabulary list.
- Listen to the dialog while you read it and try to understand as much as possible.
- Listen to the dialog without reading it, pause the playback after each sentence and translate it to English.
- Listen to the dialog without reading it, pause the playback after each sentence, and write it down in German.
- Listen to the dialog while reading it, stop after each sentence and repeat the pronunciation.

At the reviews, after every third lesson, you go back to look at the previous lessons.

6.2.1 Layout of the Lessons

- Every lesson has a title at the top.
- The lesson will introduce several topics, more and more as the lessons progress.
- Topics are usually introduced by dialogs, which are accompanied by vocabulary lists.
- Each lesson features several problems and a test at the end. You should write down your answers (either electronically or on paper) before looking at the suggested answers. The act of writing down your answers will help you to learn the spelling.
- Level I uses a "more than enough" system for the problems. You don't have to do all of the problems if you think you know the material. However, the test may require knowing certain vocabulary, so you need to make sure you know it.

6.2.2 Levels of Completion

On the contents page, you will see filled-in boxes next to each lesson. The number of boxes corresponds to the completeness of the lesson as follows:

Figure 1

- The lesson is started, with a lesson overview at least.

Figure 2

- At least half of the sections are complete.

Figure 3

- Most of the lesson is complete.

Figure 4

- The entire lesson is complete.

7 Section 1.01 ˜ Starting Point

8 Lesson 1.01 - Wie heißt du?

Figure 5

Lesson I.1: Wie heißt du? (1. Teil)

This lesson deals with basic conversation topics such as saying hello and goodbye and asking people how they are feeling. This lesson features audio recordings by native speakers to help you with the pronunciation.

8.1 Dialogue

Read and listen to the following dialogue between two students: Franz and Greta. You don't have to understand anything! You should rather try to find out how each word is pronounced.

Franz	Hallo, ich bin Franz. Wie heißt du?

Greta	Hallo, Franz. Ich heiße Greta. Wie geht's?
Franz	Es geht mir gut. Kennst du den Lehrer?
Greta	Ja, er heißt Herr Weiß.
Franz	Oh, danke, Greta. Bis dann!
Greta	Wiedersehen!

UNKNOWN TEMPLATE German/Exercise

Listen carefully! The German pronunciation of many letters is similar to the English pronunciation, but there are also many differences. Try to answer the following question by listening carefully. Write your answers on a piece of paper or in a text file before you check them.

1. How is the "a" in "Hallo", "Franz", "Greta", "ja", "danke", and "dann" pronounced?
2. How is the "i" in "ich" and "bis" pronounced?
3. How is the "ch" in "ich" pronounced?
4. How is the "z" in "Franz" pronounced?
5. How is the "w" in "wie", "Weiß" and "wiedersehen" pronounced?
6. How is the "ie" in "wie" and "Wiedersehen" pronounced?
7. How is the "ei" in "heißt", "heiße" and "Weiß" pronounced?
8. How is the "ß" in "heißt", "heiße" and "Weiß" pronounced?
9. How is the "e" in "es", "kennst", "er" and "Herr" pronounced?
10. How is the first "e" in "gehen", "Greta", and "geht" pronounced?

1. Similar to the "a" in "hard".
2. Similar to the "i" in "hit".
3. Similar to, but not entirely like, the "ch" in the Scottish word "Loch". The sound does not exist in English.
4. "z" is pronounced like "ts".
5. Similar to the "v" in "vat".
6. Similar to the "ee" in "meet".
7. "ei" is pronounced like "ai" in German or like the "i" in the English word "time".
8. "ß" is pronounced like "s".
9. Similar to "e" in "pet".
10. This is a long German "e"; the sound doesn't exist in English. It is between the "i" in "hit" and the "e" in "pet".

Now try to understand the dialogue with the help of the following list of vocabulary. (A complete translation is given in the answers to the next problems.)

English	German
Hello!	Hallo!
I	ich
I am...	Ich bin ...
how	wie
you	du
Your name is...	Du heißt ...
What is your name?	Wie heißt du?

English	German
My name is...	Ich heiße ...
it	es
it goes	es geht
How is it going?	Wie geht's? (Longer: Wie geht es?)
me	mir
good	gut
I'm good.	Es geht mir gut. (Shorter: Mir geht's gut. Even shorter: Gut.)
you know	du kennst
Do you know...?	Kennst du ...?
teacher	Lehrer
yes	ja
he	er
His name is...	Er heißt ...
Mr.	Herr
oh	oh
thanks	danke
until	bis
then	dann
See you!	Bis dann!
on	auf
again	wieder
(to) see	sehen
Goodbye!	(Auf) Wiedersehen!

UNKNOWN TEMPLATE German/Exercise

Working with the dialogue

1. Translate the dialogue to English with the help of the list of vocabulary. Write your translation on a piece of paper before you check it.
2. Listen to the recording without reading and try to understand the meaning of the words. If you cannot remember some words, look them up and start again.
3. Read the dialogue aloud. Compare your pronunciation with the pronunciation of the recording.
4. Listen to the recording without reading and write down the dialogue in German. Pause the playback after each sentence to write down what you have heard. Repeat this exercise until you know the spelling of the German words.

1. Translation to English:
   Franz: Hello, I am Franz. What is your name?
   Greta: Hello, Franz. My name is Greta. How is it going?
   Franz: I'm good. Do you know the teacher?
   Greta: Yes, his name is Mr. Weiß.
   Franz: Oh, thanks, Greta. See you!
   Greta: Goodbye!
2. —

3. —
4. See the dialogue.

8.2 Hellos and Goodbyes

There are many ways of saying hello and goodbye in German; some of them are:

English	German
Hello!	Hallo!*
	Servus! (used in southern Germany and eastern Austria, informal)
	Moin! (used in northern Germany)
Good morning!	Moin Moin! (used in northern Germany)
	Guten Morgen!*
	Morgen! (shorter)
Good day!	Guten Tag!*
	Tag! (used in Germany, shorter)
Good evening!	Guten Abend!*
Hello!	Grüß Gott! (used in southern Germany, Austria and South Tyrol)
Goodbye!	Auf Wiedersehen!*
	Wiedersehen! (shorter)
Bye!	Tschüss!*
	Ciao! (pronounced as in Italian)
	Servus! (used in southern Germany and eastern Austria, informal)
See you later!	Bis später!*
See you!	Bis dann!*
	Bis bald!*
See you soon!	Bis gleich!
Good night!	Gute Nacht!*

*You will need to know each expression with an asterisk (*) after it. The others, of course, would be useful to know if you are traveling to regions where they are used. (As you can see, the different German-speaking regions often have their own ways of saying hello and goodbye. However, you will not be required to know any of these less common phrases for any problems or tests.)

The more formal phrases are *guten Morgen*, *guten Tag*, and *auf Wiedersehen*. The less formal ones are *tschüss*, *Tag*, *servus*, and *ciao*. The others are somewhat neutral on the formal-informal scale.

UNKNOWN TEMPLATE German/Exercise

Hellos and goodbyes How would you say hello and goodbye in these situations:

1. You meet a friend in the morning.
2. You meet a teacher in the classroom in the afternoon.
3. You meet a classmate in the evening.
4. You talk to a shop assistant in the morning.

Avoiding local variants, these are some options:

1. Hello: Hallo!/(Guten) Morgen!/(Guten) Tag! Goodbye: Tschüss!/Bis später!/Bis dann!/Bis bald!
2. Hello: Guten Tag! Goodbye: Auf Wiedersehen.
3. Hello: Hallo!/Guten Abend! Goodbye: Tschüss!/Bis dann!/Bis bald!
4. Hello: Guten Morgen!/Guten Tag! Goodbye: (Auf) Wiedersehen!

8.3 Mr. and Mrs.

In German, *Herr* and *Frau* are used instead of *Mr.* and *Mrs.* before a last name; e.g., *Mr. Schwarz – Herr Schwarz*.

English	German
Mr.	Herr
Mrs.	Frau

Frau is used for married and unmarried women. Some people still use *Miss – Fräulein* in spoken German but it is no longer used in written German since it is considered an inappropriate discrimination of unmarried women.

Literally, *der Herr* means *the gentleman* and *die Frau* means *the woman*. If you use these words without a last name after them, you have to use an article before them; e.g., *der Herr* or *die Frau*. This is actually just like in English. For example:

- **The** woman's name is Mrs. Weiß – **Die** Frau heißt Frau Weiß.

Note also that the German translation of *the man* is *der Mann* and *the lady* should be translated to *die Dame*. Thus, without last names you would rather use these pairs:

- man and woman – Mann und Frau
- men and women – Männer und Frauen
- lady and gentleman – Dame und Herr
- ladies and gentlemen – Damen und Herren

UNKNOWN TEMPLATE German/Exercise

Mr. & Mrs. Translate the following words and phrases to German:

1. Mr. Schwarz
2. the man
3. The man's name is Mr. Schwarz.
4. the woman
5. The woman's name is Mrs. Schwarz.
6. ladies and gentlemen

1. Herr Schwarz
2. der Mann
3. Der Mann heißt Herr Schwarz.
4. die Frau
5. Die Frau heißt Frau Schwarz.

6. Damen und Herren

8.4 Replies to *Wie geht's?*

There are many ways to reply to the question *Wie geht's?* Here are some of them:

English	German
How are you?	Wie geht's? (longer: Wie geht es dir?)*
great	prima
good	gut
very good	sehr gut
miserable	miserabel
bad	schlecht
not (so) good	nicht (so) gut
O.K.	ganz gut
all right	Es geht so. (Or shorter: Geht so.)

*The more formal form is *Wie geht es Ihnen?*

After replying to the question, you could continue with:

• And how are you? — Und wie geht es dir? (formal: Und wie geht es Ihnen?)

Or shorter:

• And you? — Und dir? (or: Und selbst?; or formal: Und Ihnen?)

UNKNOWN TEMPLATE German/Exercise

Wie geht's? Fill in the blanks:

1. _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ geht's?
2. Prima. _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ dir?
3. Es _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ so.
4. Wie geht _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ Ihnen?
5. Sehr _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _. _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ selbst?
6. Ganz _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _, danke.

1. *Wie* geht's?
2. Prima. *Und* dir?
3. Es *geht* so.
4. Wie geht *es* Ihnen?
5. Sehr *gut*. *Und* selbst?
6. Ganz *gut*, danke.

8.5 Test

The test consists of three parts: pronunciation, vocabulary, and translation. As always, you should write down your answers before you check them. (Writing the German words is in

fact a great way to practice the spelling of German words.) The vocabulary and translation problems are all from English to German because this is what you have to learn if you want to communicate in German. Once you are able to translate an English word to the corresponding German word, it won't be any problem to translate the German word back to English.

UNKNOWN TEMPLATE German/Exercise

Pronunciation

1. How do you pronounce "Ich heiße ..."?
2. How do you pronounce "Franz"?
3. How do you pronounce "Wiedersehen"?

1. "i" as in "hit", "ch" as in "Loch", "h" as in "hotel", "ei" as the "i" in "times", "ß" is pronounced just like a "s", last "e" as in "pet"
2. "f", "r", "n" similar to the English pronunciation of these letters, "a" as in "hard", "z" like "ts".
3. "w" as the "v" in "vat", "ie" as the "ee" in "meet", "eh" is the long German "e" (between "i" in "hit" and a "e" in "pet"), the other letters are pronounced similarly in English.

UNKNOWN TEMPLATE German/Exercise

Vocabulary Translate from English to German:

1. Mr.
2. Good evening!
3. how
4. Good morning!
5. teacher
6. (the) man
7. Good night!
8. you
9. (the) woman
10. Bye!
11. How are you?
12. thanks
13. bad
14. Good day!
15. I
16. Goodbye!
17. he
18. See you later!
19. Hello!
20. very good
21. Mrs.
22. yes
23. not (so) good

1. Herr
2. Guten Abend!

3. wie
4. Guten Morgen!
5. Lehrer
6. (der) Mann
7. Gute Nacht!
8. du
9. (die) Frau
10. Tschüss!
11. Wie geht's?
12. danke
13. schlecht
14. Guten Tag!
15. ich
16. Auf Wiedersehen!
17. er
18. Bis später!
19. Hallo!
20. sehr gut
21. (die) Frau
22. ja
23. nicht (so) gut

UNKNOWN TEMPLATE German/Exercise

Translation Translate from English to German:

1. Hello! I'm Susanne. What's your name?
2. Good morning, Susanne. My name is Andreas.
3. Good day, Andreas. How are you?
4. Very good. Thanks, Susanne. And you? How are you?
5. Great, thanks. See you later, Andreas!
6. Goodbye!

1. Hallo! Ich bin Susanne. Wie heißt du?
2. Guten Morgen, Susanne. Ich heiße Andreas.
3. Guten Tag, Andreas. Wie geht's?
4. Sehr gut. Danke, Susanne. Und dir? Wie geht's dir?
5. Prima, danke. Bis später, Andreas!
6. Wiedersehen!

9 Lesson 1.02 - Freizeit

Lesson I.4: Freizeit

9.1 Dialogue

Literally, *Freizeit* means *free time*, i.e., spare time. In this dialogue, Franz and Greta are familiarizing each other with their sports activities.

Franz	Hallo, Greta! Wie spät ist es?
Greta	Es ist Viertel vor drei.
Franz	Wirklich? Ich spiele um drei Fußball. Machst du Sport, Greta?
Greta	Nein, ich bin faul. Ich gehe jetzt nach Hause.
Franz	Fußball macht aber Spaß!
Greta	Bis dann.
Franz	Wiedersehen!

English	German
late	spät
quarter	das Viertel
to (+ hour)	vor (+ hour)
three	drei
to play	spielen
I play	ich spiele
at (+ time)	um (+ time)
soccer	der* Fußball
(to) make; (to) do	machen
you make; you do	du machst
sport(s)	der Sport
lazy	faul
(to) go	gehen
I go	ich gehe
now	jetzt
to (+ place)	nach (+ place)
house	das Haus
home (direction)	nach Hause
at home (place)	zu Hause

English	German
but	aber
fun	der Spaß

*The audio recording says "das", but it should be "der".

9.2 Sports and Activities

English	German
the sport(s)	der Sport
the interests, hobbies, activities	die Hobbys (singular: das Hobby) or das Steckenpferd (-e)
the football/soccer	der Fußball
the American football	der Football (pronounced as in English)
the volleyball	der Volleyball (the Volley- in Volleyball is pronounced as in English)
the basketball	der Basketball
the tennis	das Tennis
the baseball	der Baseball (pronounced as in English)
the 9-pin bowling	das Kegeln
the chess	das Schach
the board game	das Brettspiel
the game	das Spiel
the homework	die Hausaufgaben (usually plural; singular: die Hausaufgabe)
the TV watching	das Fernsehen (the TV: der Fernseher)
the movie	der Film

Section Problems[1]>>

9.3 Spielen, Machen and Other Verbs

All three verbs that you were introduced to in Lesson 2 are irregular in some way; however, most verbs are regular verbs. In English, the regular conjugation is very easy: only for the third person singular an "-s" is added to the infinitive ("to see" becomes "he/she/it sees"). Unfortunately, there are more endings in German. The following two tables show the endings for the two regular verbs *spielen* (*to play*) and *machen* (*to do; to make*):

---

1   http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/%2FProblems%23Sports%20and%20Activities

		English		**German**	
singular	**1st person**	I	play	ich	spiele
	2nd person	you	play	du	spielst
	3rd person	he/she/it	plays	er/sie/es	spielt
plural	**1st person**	we	play	wir	spielen
	2nd person	you	play	ihr	spielt
	3rd person	they	play	sie	spielen

		English		**German**	
singular	**1st person**	I	do/make	ich	mache
	2nd person	you	do/make	du	machst
	3rd person	he/she/it	does/makes	er/sie/es	macht
plural	**1st person**	we	do/make	wir	machen
	2nd person	you	do/make	ihr	macht
	3rd person	they	do/make	sie	machen

As you see, the endings are the same for corresponding forms of *spielen* and *machen*. In fact, they are the same for all regular verbs. Thus, you can always just remove the *-en* from the infinitive of a regular German verb to form the stem (e.g., *spielen* becomes *spiel-* and *machen* becomes *mach-*) and then add the ending for the particular person. Here is a table with these endings:

		English		German	
singular	1st person	I	-	ich	-e
	2nd person	you	-	du	-st
	3rd person	he/she/it	-s	er/sie/es	-t
plural	1st person	we	-	wir	-en
	2nd person	you	-	ihr	-t
	3rd person	they	-	sie	-en*

*The form for *you (polite) — Sie* is exactly the same as for the plural, 3rd person pronoun *they — sie.*

9.3.1 Examples

- *Was machst du?*

  What are you doing?

- *Ich spiele Basketball.*

  I'm playing basketball.

- *Spielst du Fußball?*

  Do you play soccer?

- *Ich mache Hausaufgaben.*

  I'm doing homework.

- *Er macht Hausaufgaben.*

  He's doing homework.

- *Machst/Treibst du Sport?*

  Do you play sports?

Note that in English one *plays* sport, while in German one *does* sport. You can also use the question words from Lesson 3[2] to form more combinations:

- *Warum spielst du Baseball?*

  Why do you play baseball?

- *Wann machst du die Hausaufgaben?*

  When do you do the/your homework?

To say "not", use "nicht". "Nicht" goes after the verb but before the sport.

- *Wer spielt nicht Fußball?*

  Who doesn't play soccer?

- *Wir spielen nicht Tennis.*

  We don't play tennis.

9.3.2 Compound Sentences

English	German

---

2 http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/German%2FLevel%20I%2FBitte_buchstabieren_Sie%23Forming% 20Questions

English	German
and	und
but	aber
or	oder

Both German and English have compound sentences; the applications of these are enormous. They can be used in lists and also in compound sentences. For example,

- *Ich spiele Basketball und er spielt auch Basketball.*

  I play basketball, and he also plays basketball.

The new word, *also — auch* is very important. The one grammar rule about *auch* is that it always comes after the verb.

Section Problems[3]>>

9.3.3 Other Verbs and Their Conjugations

English	German
(to) read	lesen
(to) watch	schauen
(to) see	sehen
(to) work	arbeiten
(to) write	schreiben
(to) swim	schwimmen

Schauen, *schreiben* and *schwimmen* are all regular verbs; i.e., they follow regular conjugations. To conjugate them, you first remove the *-en* from the infinitive to form the stem (i.e., *schau-*, *schreib-*, and *schwimm-*), and then add the correct ending. Here is an example:

verb (infinitive)	first step (stem)	conjugated form
schau**en**	schau-	ich schau**e**

Arbeiten is an irregular verb; however, it has a simple change. Whenever the ending starts with a consonant, an *-e-* is added before it. For example, *du arbeitest* (not ~~du arbeitst~~). As well as *er/sie/es/ihr arbeitet* (not ~~er/sie/es/ihr arbeitt~~).

Lesen is also an irregular verb. For the second and third person singular the form is *liest*, i.e., *du/er/sie/es liest* (not ~~du lesst~~).

Sehen is the last irregular verb. The second person singular is *du siehst* and the third person singular is *er/sie/es sieht*.

Section Problems[4]>>

---

3   `http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/%2FProblems%23Spielen%2C%20Machen%2C%20and%20Other%20Verbs`

4   `http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/%2FProblems%23Other%20Verbs%20and%20Their%20Conjugations`

9.3.4 Two More Verb Forms

There are two common verb forms in English that just don't exist in German: the ing-form (or: present progressive); e.g., "I am playing" or "he is making"; and forms with "to do"; e.g., "I do play" or "he does not play".

The simple rule is: these constructions don't exist in German. Thus, you should translate *I am playing* to *ich spiele*. Similarly, *I do play* is also translated to *ich spiele*. Anything else (*ich mache spielen* or *ich bin spielen*) is either not possible in German or has a different meaning.

The phrase *I do not play* should be translated to *ich spiele nicht* (literally: *I play not*) since *nicht* (*not*) comes usually after the verb. This may sound like Early Modern English in a play by Shakespeare, and this is no coincidence since German and English are both West Germanic languages.

Section Problems[5]>>

9.4 Expressing likes and dislikes

English	German
What do you like to do?	Was machst du gern*?
I like to play.	Ich spiele gerne*.
What do you like to play?	Was spielst du gerne*?
I like to play soccer.	Ich spiele gerne* Fußball.

* *gern* and *gerne* can be used interchangeably.

In German, there are several ways to express likes and dislikes; this is just one of them. You can also add other verbs for other activities, e.g., *I like to read. — Ich lese gern.* or *I like to work. — Ich arbeite gern.* or *I like to watch TV. — Ich schaue gern Fernsehen.*

To express preference, you can use *lieber* instead of *gern*. For example, *I prefer to play basketball. — Ich spiele lieber Basketball.* or *I prefer to read. — Ich lese lieber.*

To express favorite activities, you can use *am liebsten* (meaning *most of all*) instead of *lieber* or *gern*. For example, *Most of all, I like to play chess. — Ich spiele am liebsten Schach.*

To express dislikes, you can use *nicht gern* instead of *gern*, for example *I don't like to swim. — Ich schwimme nicht gern.* or *I don't like to work. — Ich arbeite nicht gern.* or *I don't like to play soccer. — Ich spiele nicht gern Fußball.*

Section Problems[6]>>

---

5   http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/%2FProblems%23Two%20More%20Verb%20Forms
6   http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/%2FProblems%23Expressing%20likes%20and%20dislikes

9.5 Numbers

Numbers are among the most important and most useful words: we need them to talk about time, amounts, money, etc. Even if you are "just" a tourist, you often cannot avoid numbers. Learning numbers can be a bit of a pain; thus, here is some advice: whenever you have time, count something in German; e.g., steps, cars, people, seconds, whatever: just count.

English	German
zero	null*
one	eins
two	zwei**
three	drei
four	vier
five	fünf
six	sechs
seven	sieben
eight	acht
nine	neun
ten	zehn
eleven	elf
twelve	zwölf
thirteen	dreizehn
fourteen	vierzehn
fifteen	fünfzehn
sixteen	sechzehn
seventeen	siebzehn
eighteen	achtzehn
nineteen	neunzehn
twenty	zwanzig
twenty-one	einundzwanzig*
twenty-two	zweiundzwanzig*
twenty-three	dreiundzwanzig*
24 - 29	analogous to 22 and 23
thirty	dreißig
31 - 39, etc.	analogous to 21 - 29
forty	vierzig
fifty	fünfzig
sixty	sechzig
seventy	siebzig
eighty	achtzig*
ninety	neunzig*
hundred	hundert (or: einhundert)
hundred and one	hunderteins*
two hundred	zweihundert*
thousand	tausend (or: eintausend)

English	German
two thousand	zweitausend*

*Some numbers are missing in the audio recording.

**Some people sometimes say *zwo* instead of *zwei* in order to distinguishing it more clearly from *drei* (*three*), especially on the phone.

Notice the pattern: *-teen* translates to *-zehn*, and *-ty* to *-zig*.

There is one big problem with the numbers: in German the unit position comes before the tens and is connected by *und* (*and*). For example: *twenty-three — dreiundzwanzig* (literally: *threeandtwenty*), *twenty-four — vierundzwanzig*, *thirty-five — fünfunddreißig*, *forty-six — sechsundvierzig*, etc.

One exception is *eins* which becomes *ein-* in 21, 31, 41, etc.: *twenty-one — einundzwanzig* (literally: *oneandtwenty*), *thirty-one — einunddreißig*, *forty-one — einundvierzig*, etc.

German is not the only language with this "reverse" order of numbers: Danish (another Germanic language) and Arabic do it the same way. This was also the standard way of forming numbers in older versions of English ("Four and twenty blackbirds/Baked in a pie." `http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Sing_a_Song_of_Sixpence`).

Section Problems[7]`>>`

---

7   `http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/%2FProblems%23Numbers`

10 What's On the Test

To go straight to the lesson test, go here[1].

The test will have four parts to it: Grammar (79 points), Translating (95 points), Reading Comprehension (20 points), Vocabulary (20 points), and Previous Topics (10 points) in that order. The Grammar section will test your ability to know the verbs from this lesson and it's various versions, to know articles - the genders of them and the correct usage of them, and correct word order.

The Translating section is worth the most points, and it too has three sections. You must know the translations for sentences and phrases going from English to German, and be able to take a German dialogue and translate it back into English. Also you must know the translation from Numbers to German.

The third section, Reading Comprehension, is Comprehension Questions you must know how to read the conversion and after reading you will be asked question on the previous conversion.

The fourth section is a vocabulary section. You get 20 English words on the left and 20 German words on the right, and be asked to match them. To study for that, check out the 401 flashcards related to this lesson at FlashcardExchange.com[2] *Part I* and FlashcardExchange.com[3] *Part II*.

The last section, Previous Topics, is a quick review on Lesson 1[4] to get ready for this section, just look at some past notes or go to Lesson 1[5] and study. That is the whole test. Take it![6]

---

1   http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/%2FTest
2   http://www.flashcardexchange.com/flashcards/view/249128
3   http://www.flashcardexchange.com/flashcards/view/249218
4   Chapter 8 on page 23
5   Chapter 8 on page 23
6   http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/German%2FLevel%20I%2FFreizeit%2FTest

11 Lesson 1.03 - Essen

Lesson I.6: Essen

11.1 Dialogue

Franz	Hallo, Greta! Wie geht's?
Greta	Sehr gut. Ich habe Hunger.
Franz	Ich auch. Möchtest du etwas essen?
Greta	Ja!
	In der Gaststätte
Greta	Ich möchte Salat, Brot und Wasser.
Franz	Hast du jetzt keinen Hunger?
Greta	Doch, ich habe großen Hunger. Was bekommst du?
Franz	Ich bekomme ein Stück Apfelstrudel und einen Eisbecher.
Greta	Warum das? Du sollst eine Bratwurst nehmen.
Franz	Nein, ich bin zufrieden. Ich habe keinen großen Hunger.
Greta	Ach so, dann ist das genug.
	Nach zwanzig Minuten
Greta	Diese Gaststätte ist schrecklich! Ich möchte etwas zu essen!
Franz	Wir gehen!

11.2 Food!

die Früchte (das Obst) - fruits		**das Gemüse - vegetables**	
der Apfel	apple	*der Champignon, die Pilze*	mushroom
die Banane	banana	*der Spargel*	asparagus
die Erdbeere	strawberry	*der Spinat*	spinach
die Kirsche	cherry	*die Erbsen*	peas
die Orange	orange	*die Kartoffel*	potato
die Traube	grape	*die Tomate*	tomato
die Zitrone	lemon	*die Zwiebel*	onion
die Grapefruit	grapefruit	*die Bohnen*	beans
		die Möhre, die Karotte	carrot
das Fleisch - meat		**die Meeresfrüchte - shellfish, seafood**	
das Lammfleisch	lamb	die Kammmuschel	scallop

die Früchte (das Obst) - fruits

der Truthahn	turkey
der Schinken	ham
das Schweinefleisch	pork
das Hähnchen	chicken
das Rindfleisch	beef
die Wurst	sausage

die Milchprodukte - dairy products

die Butter	butter
der Käse	cheese
die Milch	milk
der Joghurt	yogurt

die Nachspeise - dessert

das Bonbon	candy
die Schokolade	chocolate
die Torte	tart
der Kuchen	cake
der Apfelstrudel	apple strudel
der (Apfel)Kuchen	(apple) pie
das Eis	ice cream
der Eisbecher	bowl of ice cream

das Gemüse - vegetables

die Krabbe	crab
die Garnele	shrimp

der Fisch - fish

die Sardellen	anchovies
der Lachs	salmon
der Aal	eel

Other Foods

die Suppe	soup
die Pommes (frites)	French fries
die Pizza	pizza
der Hamburger	hamburger
der Senf	mustard
das Brot	bread
die Butter	butter
der Salat	salad
der Pfeffer	pepper
der Reis	rice
das Salz	salt
der Zucker	sugar
die Konfitüre	jam

Section Problems[1] >>

11.3 Accusative Case

As you know from the introduction[2], in German, there are four cases. Three are used often. The first, **Nominative Case**, you learned in Lesson 1[3]. It covers the subject[4], and the predicate noun (in "He is (noun).", (noun) is the predicate noun). The second, the **Accusative Case**, you will learn now. It covers the direct object[5] and the object of several prepositions[6]. The third, the **Dative Case** will be taught later on. It covers the indirect object[7] and the object of many other prepositions.

The object of a sentence will be in accusative case. In, "You hurt me.", 'me' would be accusative.

Note: The **Accusative Case** and **Dative Case** are identical in English; that's why German has one case extra.

---

1   http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/%2FProblems%23Food%21
2   Chapter 6 on page 17
3   Chapter 8.5 on page 28
4   http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Subject%20%28grammar%29
5   http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Direct%20object
6   http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Preposition
7   http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Indirect%20object

11.3.1 Articles

	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter	Plural
Definite Article	**den**	die	das	die
Indefinite Article	**einen**	eine	ein	-eine*

* The indefinite article for plurals is non-existent. However related words, such as possessives and the kein- words that you will learn later this lesson, will end in *eine*for plurals.

In the articles, the memory hook for accusative case is "Der goes to den (pronounced "dane"

UNKNOWN TEMPLATE audio

De-den.oggaudio

) and the rest stays the same." The masculine indefinite article goes to *einen*, and everything else stays the same there. Therefore above, *der* Hamburger goes to *den* Hamburger and *ein* Hamburger goes to *einen* Hamburger when the hamburger is the direct object, such as in "Er hat einen Hamburger." ("He has a hamburger.")

If you are getting confused, it's fine. This topic is one of the hardest for English speakers to grasp. Here are some solutions:

To find out the case of something, first find the verb. The verb rules the sentence. Everything revolves around it. Next you find the subject of the sentence. The subject is the thing/person that is *doing* the verb. **The subject is always in the Nominative Case, so it takes on the der, die, das, die, or ein, eine, ein.**

Now you look back at the verb. If it is a being verb (am, are, is, etc.), the next noun after the verb is the **predicate noun**. An easy way to figure this out is to write an equation. If the verb can be replaced with an equals sign (=), then the following noun is a predicate noun. If it can't be replaced by an equals sign, refer to the next paragraph. **The predicate noun is also always in the Nominative Case, so the same rules apply to it.**

> Ich bin **ein** Junge.
> Sie ist **eine** Frau.

If the verb of the sentence is an action verb (playing, throwing, making, eating), find what the subject is doing the verb to. For example, if the verb is "makes" (macht), you look for what is being made. That is the direct object. **The direct object is always in the Accusative Case, so it takes on the den, die, das, die, or einen, eine, ein.**

> Sie haben **den** Cheeseburger.
> Habt ihr **einen** Salat?

The indefinite articles, when you just look at their endings, select e, -, e for nominative case, and en, e, -, e for accusative.

Remember, between nominative and accusative, the only third-person change is in the masculine form.

Section Problems[8] >>

11.3.2 Pronouns

The pronouns experience a much bigger change than the articles. This is also true in English, as the articles (a, an, the) do not change ever, but *I* goes to *me*, *we* goes to *us*, etc.

Not everything is the same, though. While *me* is *mich* and *us* is *uns*, the second and third persons undergo different changes. In third person, as in the articles, the only change is in masculine singular. Following the "der goes to den" rule, *er* goes to *ihn* when in the accusative case.

The second person in English never changes. In German, *du* goes to *dich* and *ihr* goes to *euch*. *Sie*, the formal version of either, stays the same. Remember, *Sie* (2nd person formal) and *sie* (3rd person plural) only differ in their meanings and the fact that the former is capitalized and the latter is not. This stays true throughout German grammar.

Here is a tabular representation of the above.

---

8   http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/%2FProblems%23Articles

Singular

Person	English	German
1st	me	*mich*
2nd	you	*dich*
3rd	him, her, it	*ihn, sie, es*

Plural

Person	English	German
1st	us	*uns*
2nd	you (all)	*euch*
3rd	them	*sie*

Section Problems[9] >>

11.3.3 Antecedents

Note: *This is just a quick lesson in English grammar applied into German. If you already know all about antecedents in English, skip the first paragraph.*

When using a pronoun, you have to know what it is for it to work. There are some rare exceptions, such as in mysteries or drama, but otherwise this is always true. Sometimes in dialogue this is taken care of by pointing or making some other gesture, but most of the time, the pronoun modifies something already mentioned. **The object/person mentioned earlier that turns into a pronoun later is called the antecedent.**

In German this is very useful. You can't simply say 'it' any more. Many food words are masculine and feminine, and when you turn them into pronouns, they turn into 'he', 'she', 'him', and 'her', not always 'it'. For example, the sentence "The cheeseburger tastes good. It's very crunchy." turns into "The cheeseburger tastes good. *He's* very crunchy." Note: You will learn how to say this in German later in this lesson.

Why is it "he"? This is where the antecedent comes in. Because there are foods that are masculine and feminine in German, you can't assume the 'es'. You have to look back at the previous sentence, at the antecedent, *der Cheeseburger*. "Der Cheeseburger" is replaced by *er* (since it is the subject, and therefore in Nominative Case). Therefore, all you need to know are these connections: der/den-er/ihn, die-sie, das-es, die-sie.

Section Problems[10] >>

11.4 Food-Related Verbs

- *essen (I)* - to eat, to be eating, to do eat
- *trinken* - to drink, to be drinking, to do drink
- *bekommen* - to get/receive, to be getting/receiving, to do get/receive
- *möchten (M)* - would like
- *wollen (M)* - to want, to be wanting, to do want

Of these five verbs, only trinken and bekommen are regular. Essen is *irregular* (that's what the "I" means). Do you remember from the last lesson 'lesen' and 'sehen'? In both of them, the first 'e' changed to 'ie' in the du- and er/sie/es-forms. Well *essen* experiences the same change, except that it changes to 'i', not 'ie'. Also, it acts the same as 'lesen' in the du-form: You don't have three s's in a row.

---

9   http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/%2FProblems%23Pronouns
10   http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/%2FProblems%23Antecedents

Person	Singular		Plural	
1st	ich	*esse*	wir	*essen*
2nd	du	*isst*	ihr	*esst*
3rd	er/sie/es	*isst*	sie	*essen*

Isst sounds and looks a lot like *ist*. The minute difference happens to be in the way you pronounce the *s*. When you mean *eats* it is sometimes an overstressed hissing (i.e. extremely sharp) sound. In normal life Germans, too, can only tell which verb is meant from knowing the context.

Just like in last lesson, where you could say, *"Ich spiele gerne Fußball."*, you can also extend it to food. "I like to eat cheeseburgers." is translated as *"Ich esse gerne Cheeseburger."*

Before 1996[11], the usage of *ißt* and *eßt* were common, but the new reform rules specify that these spellings are now the only correct spellings.

The last two verbs (marked *(M)*) are *modals*. They will be discussed in the next section.

Section Problems[12] >>

11.5 Modals

In the introduction[13], you learned that German has no helping verbs. Instead, they have **modals**, words that basically do the same thing.

Modals are conjugated very differently from normal verbs. The ich- and er/sie/es-forms are always the same, while the du-form adds an 'st'. Most modals experience a vowel change from singular to plural, and the rest is the same.

11.5.1 Möchten

'Möchten' isn't technically a modal, but it acts exactly the same. There is no vowel change, and the ich- and er/sie/es forms are "möchte". Here is the complete conjugation:

---

11   `http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/German%20spelling%20reform%20of%201996`
12   `http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/%2FProblems%23Food-Related%20Verbs`
13   Chapter 6 on page 17

Person	Singular		Plural	
1st	ich	*möchte*	wir	*möchten*
2nd	du	*möchtest*	ihr	*möchtet*
3rd	er/sie/es	*möchte*	sie	*möchten*

'Möchten' means "would like" and can be applied to food (e.g. Ich möchte einen Cheeseburger.). Möchten can be translated even more literally as "would like to", and is traditionally used with an infinitive verb at the end of the sentence (e.g. "Ich möchte jetzt gehen"/"I would like to go now"). However, this infinitive is not necessary if it's completely obvious what you're talking about (If you say "Ich möchte einen Cheeseburger", everyone will assume that you would like a cheeseburger to eat.)

(Note: *Technically, "möchten" is not a word. The above cited conjugation is actually the "Konjunktiv" of "mögen", which has become so popular as a phrase, that even many Germans today aren't aware of it any more, so you don't need to worry about it. "Etwas mögen" means "to like to", and "I would like" is the closest translation of "ich möchte."*)

11.5.2 Wollen

'Wollen' is a true modal; it even changes vowels. Ich/er/sie/es *will* and du *willst.* Here is the complete conjugation:

Person	Singular		Plural	
1st	ich	*will*	wir	*wollen*
2nd	du	*willst*	ihr	*wollt*
3rd	er/sie/es	*will*	sie	*wollen*

'Wollen' can also be applied to food, but may be considered impolite and demanding ("Ich will einen Cheeseburger!" roughly means "I demand a cheeseburger!" *Möchten* should be used instead: "Ich möchte einen Cheeseburger!" = "I want a cheeseburger!").

'Wollen' should not be confused with the future tense, despite the presence of the English word 'will' in the conjugations. However, will[14] can also mean an intent or a document showing what one *wants* to happen. So it is not so different from 'to want' as possibly originally presumed.

11.5.3 Modals with other verbs

This is very important. When you need to use another verb with a modal (such as expressing you would like or want to perform an action), the sentence's word order is somewhat different than it would be in English. In English, you would state the subject pronoun (such as "I"), an English equivalent to the modal verb (such as "want"), the action you want to perform (such as "to eat") and then what the action will be performed on (such as "hamburger"), making the sentence "I want to eat a hamburger." In German you must put the action at the end of the sentence, making the sentence "I want a hamburger to eat." (*"Ich will einen Hamburger essen."*)

Section Problems[15] >>

11.6 Hunger and Thirst

In German, instead of saying, "I'm hungry."(Ich bin hungrig), you may also say "I have hunger."(Ich habe Hunger) The same applies to thirst. Here are the German translations of the corresponding nouns:

Hunger - der Hunger

Thirst - der Durst

Like in English, these two words do not have a plural form. When using them, you don't need to worry about the 'der'; you can just say, "Ich habe Hunger" to say "I am hungry" and "Ich habe keinen Hunger" for "I am not hungry."

Somewhat archaic but still in use are the adjectives *hungrig* and *durstig*. Those are often used when talking about someone (especially animals): "Der Löwe ist hungrig" for "The lion is hungry".

Section Problems[16] >>

---

14   http://en.wiktionary.org/wiki/will
15   http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/%2FProblems%23Modals
16   http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/%2FProblems%23Hunger%20and%20Thirst

11.7 Formal Conversations

In Lesson 1[17], you learned how to talk formally, using phrases like "Guten Morgen!" and "Wie heißen Sie?". There are, however, a few words that are 'survival words' in Germany, specifically:

Danke - Thank you, Thanks

Bitte - Please *and* You're welcome.

To make this even more formal, you can tack on the word 'schön' to the end of "Thank you" and "You're welcome" to make 'dankeschön' and 'bitteschön' (both one word) in response. 'Schön' literally means 'pretty' (you'll relearn this next lesson).

Some other ways to say "thank you":

- Dankeschön - Thank you very much
- Danke sehr - Thanks a lot
- Herzlichen Dank ("herzlichen" means sincere or from the heart; you may remember it from "Herzlichen Glückwunsch zum Geburtstag!" last lesson)
- Vielen Dank - Thanks a lot
- Tausend Dank* - Thanks a million (literally meaning a thousand, but English is more generous)
- Aufrichtigen Dank* - would be "thank you sincerely" (*very* formal)

* - You will not be tested on these phrases.

Some other ways to say "You are welcome":

- Bitteschön!
- Bitte sehr!
- Gern geschehen! - Don't mention it
- Gerne! - also meaning "gladly"
- Kein Problem! - No problem
- Dafür nicht!* - (Do) not (thank me) for this (only used in Northern Germany)

* - You will not be tested on this phrase.

These might also be useful:

Entschuldigung - Excuse me, Pardon

Es tut mir leid - Sorry, I'm sorry

Section Problems[18] >>

11.8 Kein-words

Twice you have been taught that the ending of the indefinite article for plurals *would be* eine (for Nominative and Accusative cases), if there was an indefinite article for plurals.

---

17   Chapter 8 on page 23
18   http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/%2FProblems%23Formal%20Conversations

Now that lesson applies. The **k**ein-words have the same endings as the ein-words, and they mean the opposite: no, not any, none. For example, "kein Cheeseburger" means "no cheeseburger". "Keine Cheeseburger" (in this case Cheeseburger is plural) means "No cheeseburger**s**". Notice the 'e' at the end of 'keine'. That's the ending for plurals and feminine nouns and can be likened to the "der, die, das -> die" relationship, where the feminine article serves for the plural as well.

Section Problems[19] >>

11.9 Ordering at a Restaurant in Germany

das Restaur'ant' (French pronunciation) - Restaurant

UNKNOWN TEMPLATE Audio

Fr-Restaurant.ogg

There are many restaurants you might find in Germany. Much like in English-speaking countries, you would more likely use the name of the restaurant than name what kind of restaurant. If you want to address the wish to eat a certain food, there are two ways:

example: "wanting to eat chinese food"

1. "Ich möchte gerne zum Chinesen." - literally: "I want to go to the Chinese (restaurant)."
2. "Ich möchte gerne chinesisch essen (gehen)." - literally: "I want to (go) eat Chinese (style food)."

Here are some more restaurants you can find in Germany:

- American food: "zum Amerikaner" / "amerikanisch essen"*
- Arabic food: "zum Araber" / "arabisch essen"
- Chinese food: "zum Chinesen" / "chinesisch essen"
- French food: "zum Franzosen" / "französisch essen"
- Greek food: "zum Griechen" / "griechisch essen"
- Italian food: "zum Italiener" / "italienisch essen"
- Indian food: "zum Inder" / "indisch essen"
- Japanese food: "zum Japaner" / "japanisch essen"
- Mexican food: "zum Mexikaner" / "mexikanisch essen"
- Spanish food: "zum Spanier" / "spanisch essen"
- Turkish food: "zum Türken" / "türkisch essen"

* "zum Amerikaner" is often used in a jokey way, to express that one is going to either McDonald's or Burger King. There are few American restaurants, in Germany and they are mostly referred to as "(American) Diner", so it is not used like "zum Italiener".

---

19 http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/%2FProblems%23Kein-words

11.10 Accusative case prepositions

You read at the beginning of this lesson that the **Accusative Case** covers the direct object and the objects of some prepositions. Here are those prepositions that always fall under Accusative Case

bis - until

durch - through

entlang - along

für - for

gegen - against

ohne - without

um - at, around

You learned *um* last lesson, and *ohne* earlier this lesson. *Bis*, *durch*, *entlang* and *gegen* will be taught in depth later, and *für* will be taught now.

Up until this point, you have only worried about the Accusative Case in third person. *Für*, meaning 'for', can and should be used in the first and second persons, too. Here's an example:

"The cheeseburger is for me." - "Der Cheeseburger ist *für mich*."

As you can see, 'me' is put into accusative case because the preposition is *für*.

Section Problems[20] >>

11.11 Saying How Food Tastes

In German (as in English) there are several ways of telling how food tastes. You can do this with 'gut' and 'schlecht' from Lesson 1[21] to say:

Der Cheeseburger schmeckt gut - The cheeseburger tastes good

Der Cheeseburger schmeckt schlecht - The cheeseburger tastes bad

But this is bland. Hopefully the food has more flavor than the description of it. You can use the following words to more colorfully describe how the cheeseburger tastes:

- delicious - *lecker*

- delicious - *delikat** (a lot more formal than lecker)

- tasty - *schmackhaft*

- juicy - *saftig**

---

20   http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/%2FProblems%23Accusative%20case%20preparations
21   Chapter 8 on page 23

- crunchy - *knackig* (can also mean *crispy*)

- crispy - *knusprig**

- spicy - *würzig, pikant*

- stale, tasteless - *fade** (Austria: fad)

- salty - *salzig*

- oversalted - *versalzen**

- sweet - *süß*

- bitter - *bitter*

- sour - *sauer*

- creamy - *cremig**

- hot (in the sense of "very spicy") - *scharf* - literally meaning "sharp"

- hot (in the sense of "very warm") - *heiß*

- burnt - *angebrannt**

- cold - *kalt*

- disgusting, terrible - *schrecklich*

* - You will not be tested on these descriptors.

Schmecken is a regular verb. Here is it's conjugation:

Person	Singular		Plural	
1st	ich	*schmecke*	wir	*schmecken*
2nd	du	*schmeckst*	ihr	*schmeckt*
3rd	er/sie/es	*schmeckt*	sie	*schmecken*

The first and second persons really shouldn't be used. No one is going to say, "You guys taste salty" or "I taste creamy." So the only forms you *really* need to know are er/sie/es *schmeckt* and sie (plural) *schmecken*.

You can use 'schmeckt' and 'schmecken' or 'ist' and 'sind' to state how the food tastes. Just use whichever one you would use in English and it'll usually be correct.

Although the English meaning of *schmecken* is simply *to taste*, *"Schmeckt der Cheeseburger?"* can be taken in a positive way to mean "Do you like the cheeseburger?". In other words, *schmecken* alone can mean *to taste good*.

Section Problems[22] >>

11.12 Dieser-forms

"*The* cheeseburger tastes good." does not sound that specific as to which cheeseburger you are talking about. You could be talking about a cheeseburger that is not directly in front of you. It just isn't clear. Now, if you said, "*This* cheeseburger tastes good.", it would be obvious that you're talking about the cheeseburger you're eating. 'Dieser' is the German translation for 'this': "Dieser Cheeseburger schmeckt gut."

11.12.1 Dieser

'Dieser' is a special adjective. It changes forms in different situations: different genders and different cases. It can also mean 'these' when modifying a plural. Here are its forms:

	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter	Plural
Nominative Case	dies**er**	dies**e**	dies**es**	dies**e**
Accusative Case	dies**en**	dies**e**	dies**es**	dies**e**

As you can see, *dieser* is only appropriate for modifying masculine nouns in nominative case. But 'Cheeseburger', which is masculine, is the subject of the sentence, "Dieser Cheeseburger schmeckt gut." So it is correct in that circumstance.

11.12.2 Jeder

Jeder means 'every'. It acts exactly like 'dieser' in its endings, so it should be easy to remember. Here are the different forms:

	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative Case	jed**er**	jed**e**	jed**es**
Accusative Case	jed**en**	jed**e**	jed**es**

---

22   http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/%2FProblems%23Saying%20How%20Food%20Tastes

Notice the absence of the plural form. When you think about this, it's the same in English: no one says 'every books'.

11.12.3 Welcher

'Welcher' is the third of this threesome of adjectives. 'Welcher' means 'which' and is used like the other interrogatives[23] (wer, was, wann, wo, warum, wie, and welcher). However, because the general subject has to be specified, *welcher* must be inflected before use: "Welcher Hamburger ist seine?" Its forms have the same endings as 'dieser'.

	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter	Plural
Nominative Case	welch**er**	welch**e**	welch**es**	welch**e**
Accusative Case	welch**en**	welch**e**	welch**es**	welch**e**

11.12.4 Connection with Time

You might want to say 'every day', 'this week', 'every morning', or 'which Tuesday night?'. But to do this, not only do you need to know the jeder-forms, but also the genders of the times and the cases. The second one is easy: **Whenever you do something at a certain time, that time is put into Accusative Case.** Last lesson, you learned the gender of one time: *der* Tag. So now you know everything to say 'diesen Tag', 'jeden Tag', and 'welchen Tag?' (this day, every day, and which day?). Here are the cases of all the times in Lesson 2[24]:

Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
• Tag	• Woche	• Jahr
• Monat	• Nacht	• Wochenende
• Morgen		
• Abend		
• Nachmittag		

When extending to 'which Tuesday night?', remember that the night stays feminine on Tuesday, so it stays "Welche Dienstagnacht?". Likewise, you can say 'every June' the same as 'every month': 'jeden Juni'.

11.12.5 This and That

Ich möchte einen Cheeseburger. Der schmeckt sehr gut.

Ich esse jeden Tag Cheeseburger. Die habe ich gern.

---

23   `http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Interrogative%20word`
24   Chapter 9 on page 31

Look at the second sentence of each of these German dialogues. What's missing? That's right, instead of "Der Cheeseburger schmeckt sehr gut." and "Die Cheeseburger habe ich gern.", both of the 'Cheeseburgers, so to speak, are dropped. We're left with just the articles, only in this case, they aren't articles. They're **demonstrative pronouns**.

Demonstrative pronouns aren't scary. They're just the same as the normal pronouns, only they give more *oomph* to the sentence. They can be translated as either 'this' or 'that' ("I'd like a cheeseburger. That tastes very good."), or 'these' or 'those' for plurals ("I eat cheeseburgers every day. These I like.").

Demonstrative pronouns are exactly the same as the definite articles (well, there is one change in dative, but that will be covered in Lesson 7[25]). If you are not sure of the gender (meaning in context, the speaker doesn't know, not that you've forgotten that it's 'der Cheeseburger'), use 'das', like in "Was ist das?" (What is that?).

11.13 Money and Paying

Germany, Austria, Luxemburg, Belgium and Südtirol – in other words: all German speaking regions except Switzerland and Liechtenstein– have given up their former currencies and adopted the Euro as of 1999. One *Euro* is worth 100 *Cents*. Because they are not members of the European Union, Switzerland and Liechtenstein have kept the Swiss Francs (*Franken* = 100 *Rappen*).

'Euro' normally does not change in the plural in German, so you would still say "Ich habe 500 Euro." Nevertheless, there is an exception: Euro *coins*. If you say "Ich habe vier Euros.", you actually are saying that you have four 1-Euro coins. Because the backsides of euro coins look different in each country, many people in Europe have started collecting foreign euro coins. In this case you can say "Ich habe irische Euros." (I have Irish euro coins.) for example.

There is not yet a rule whether or not the word *"Cent"* has a different plural form. The majority of Germans are using the word *"Cent"* as a plural form, but when they don't it is simply *"Cents"*.

In German "euro" is pronounced ['oi-ro], not [you-ro]. For "Cent" there are two pronunciations: you can either pronounce it as in English or you say "tzent". The latter version seems to be preferred by older people.

When at a restaurant, you will want to pay at the end. You can use this vocabulary to help you.

- to pay - *zahlen*
- the bill - *die Rechnung**
- the waiter - *der Kellner*, *die Bedienung (also*der Ober*)***
- the waitress - *die Kellnerin* (but **not** *die Oberin* because this means *Reverend Mother*)

---

25 Chapter 19 on page 121

- "How much is that?" - *"Was macht das?"* ("What does that make?") or the "umgangssprachliche" *"Wie viel kostet das?"*

* To ask for the bill you can say, "Bitte zahlen!", or make it a complete sentence: "Ich würde gern zahlen!", or "Wir möchten/wollen zahlen!". You can also say, "(Herr Ober), die Rechnung bitte!". The term "der Ober" is the waiter, but this sounds very old fashioned and is hardly ever used today. To address the waiter you would probably say "Entschuldigen Sie, ..." ("Pardon, ...") as in "Entschuldigen Sie, wir würden gern zahlen" (Pardon me, we would like to pay").

** Although it is perfectly OK to say "Bedienung" or "Kellner" when talking about a waiter or a waitress, you should not address the waiter by saying "Bedienung!" or even "Fräulein!" which is regarded very impolite since the 1980s.

Section Problems[26] >>

11.14 Test

The test will be located here[27], but the test for this lesson is not yet completed.

---

26   http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/%2FProblems%23Dieser-forms
27   http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/%2FTest

12 Review 1.01

Review Section I.A: Lessons I.1 to I.3

12.1 Vocabulary

English	German
Hello!	Hallo!
I	ich
I am...	Ich bin ...
how	wie
you	du
Your name is...	Du heißt ...
What is your name?	Wie heißt du?
My name is...	Ich heiße ...
it	es
it goes	es geht
How is it going?	Wie geht's? (Longer: Wie geht es?)
me	mir
good	gut
I'm good.	Es geht mir gut. (Shorter: Mir geht's gut. Even shorter: Gut.)
you know	du kennst
Do you know...?	Kennst du ...?
teacher	Lehrer
yes	ja
he	er
His name is...	Er heißt ...
Mr.	Herr
oh	oh
thanks	danke
until	bis
then	dann
See you!	Bis dann!
on	auf
again	wieder
(to) see	sehen
Goodbye!	(Auf) Wiedersehen!

English	German
Hello!	Hallo!*
	Servus! (used in eastern Austria, informal)
	Moin! (used in northern Germany)
Good morning!	Moin Moin! (used in northern Germany)
	Guten Morgen!*
	Morgen! (shorter)
Good day!	Guten Tag!*
	Tag! (used in Germany, shorter)
Good evening!	Guten Abend!*
Hello!	Grüß Gott! (used in southern Germany, Austria and South Tyrol)
Goodbye!	Auf Wiedersehen!*
	Wiedersehen! (shorter)
Bye!	Tschüss!*
	Ciao! (pronounced as in Italian)
	Servus! (used in eastern Austria, informal)
See you later!	Bis später!*
See you!	Bis dann!*
	Bis bald!*
See you soon!	Bis gleich!
Good night!	Gute Nacht!*

*You will need to know each expression with an asterisk (*) after it. The others, of course, would be useful to know if you are traveling to regions where they are used. (As you can see, the different German-speaking regions often have their own ways of saying hello and goodbye. However, you will not be required to know any of these less common phrases for any problems or tests.)

English	German
Mr.	Herr
Mrs.	Frau

English	German
How are you?	Wie geht's? (longer: Wie geht es?)*
great	prima
good	gut
very good	sehr gut
miserable	miserabel
bad	schlecht
not (so) good	nicht (so) gut
O.K.	ganz gut
all right	Es geht so. (Or shorter: Geht so.)

*The more formal form is *Wie geht es Ihnen?*

68

English	German
Good morning.	Guten Morgen.
you (formal)	Sie
You are... (formal)	Sie sind ...
Are you...? (formal)	Sind Sie ...?
no	nein
late	spät
I am late.	Ich bin spät dran.
You're welcome.	Bitte.
also	auch
later	später
See you later.	Bis später.

		English	German
singular	**1st person**	I	ich
	2nd person	you	du, Sie*
	3rd person	he, she, it	er, sie, es
plural	**1st person**	we	wir
	2nd person	you	ihr, Sie*
	3rd person	they	sie

*_Sie_ is the formal (polite) version of _du_ and _ihr_.

English	German
My name is...	Ich heiße ...
His/Her/Its name is...	Er/Sie/Es heißt ...
Their names are...	Sie heißen ...
Our names are...	Wir heißen ...
Your name is...	Du heißt ...
Your names are...	Ihr heißt ...
What is your name?	Wie heißt du?*
What are your names?	Wie heißt ihr?*

*Remember, the formal way to ask someone's name is to ask _Wie heißen Sie?_

		English	German
singular	**1st person**	I am called	ich heiße
	2nd person	you are called	du heißt
	3rd person	he/she/it is called	er/sie/es heißt
plural	**1st person**	we are called	wir heißen
	2nd person	you are called	ihr heißt
	3rd person	they are called	sie heißen*

*The form of verbs for _you (polite)_ — _Sie_ is exactly the same as for the plural, 3rd person pronoun _they_ — _sie_.

		English	German
singular	**1st person**	I am	ich bin
	2nd person	you are	du bist
	3rd person	he/she/it is	er/sie/es ist
plural	**1st person**	we are	wir sind
	2nd person	you are	ihr seid
	3rd person	they are	sie sind*

*Don't forget that the form for *you (polite) — Sie* is the same as for the plural, 3rd person pronoun *they — sie*.

		English	German
singular	**1st person**	I have	ich habe
	2nd person	you have	du hast
	3rd person	he/she/it has	er/sie/es hat
plural	**1st person**	we have	wir haben
	2nd person	you have	ihr habt
	3rd person	they have	sie haben*

*This is also the form for *you (polite) — Sie*.

English	German
the directory assistance	die Auskunft
I would like to have...	Ich hätte gern(e) ...
the phone number	die Telefonnummer
from Berne	aus Bern
How do you write this?	Wie schreibt man das?
please	bitte
(to) spell	buchstabieren
of course	natürlich
A as in Anton	A wie Anton
twice	zweimal
The number is...	Die Nummer lautet ...

Characters	Aa	Bb	Cc	Dd	Ee	Ff	Gg	Hh	Ii	Jj	Kk	Ll	Mm	Nn	Oo	Pp	Qq	Rr	Ss	Tt	Uu	Vv	Ww	Xx
Umlauts	Ää														Öö				SS ß		Üü			
Examples	Ärger (anger)														Ökonom (economist)						Übermut (high spirits)			

English	German
who?	wer?
what?	was?
where?	wo?
when?	wann?
why?	warum?
how?	wie?

		German	English
singular	**masculine**	**der** Junge	the boy
	feminine	**die** Frau	the woman
	neuter	**das** Mädchen*	the girl
plural	**masculine**	**die** Jungen	the boys
	feminine	**die** Frauen	the women
	neuter	**die** Mädchen	the girls

*Note that *Mädchen* is neuter. (In fact, almost all words with the ending *-chen* are neuter.)

		German	English
singular	**masculine**	**ein** Mann	a man
	feminine	**eine** Frau	a woman
	neuter	**ein** Mädchen*	a girl

*Note that *Mädchen* is neuter.

12.2 Wie heißt Du? (1. Teil)

12.2.1 Hello and Goodbyes

Can you remember the most common phrases for hellos and goodbyes in German?

Review[1]

12.2.2 Mr. and Mrs.

How do you say *Mr.* and *Mrs.* in German?

Review[2]

---

1   Chapter 8.2 on page 26
2   Chapter 8.3 on page 27

12.2.3 Replies to *Wie geht's?*

Do you remember how to reply to this question?

Review[3]

12.3 Wie heißt du? (2. Teil)

12.3.1 Sie and du

Do you remember when to use *Sie* and when to use *du*?

Review[4]

12.3.2 Subject Pronouns

Do you remember what a subject pronoun is? Do you remember the German subject pronouns?

Review[5]

12.3.3 Names

Do you remember how to tell your or someone else's name?

Review[6]

12.3.4 Important Verbs

Do you remember how to conjugate *heißen*, *sein*, and *haben*?

Review[7]

12.4 Bitte buchstabieren Sie

12.4.1 The German Alphabet

Do you remember how to spell the German letters?

---

3 Chapter 8.5 on page 28

4 http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/German%2FLevel%20I%2FWie_hei%C3%9Ft_du%3F_%282._Teil%29%
   23Sie_and_du

5 http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/German%2FLevel%20I%2FWie_hei%C3%9Ft_du%3F_%282._Teil%29%
   23Subject_Pronouns

6 http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/German%2FLevel%20I%2FWie_hei%C3%9Ft_du%3F_%282._Teil%29%
   23Names

7 http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/German%2FLevel%20I%2FWie_hei%C3%9Ft_du%3F_%282._Teil%29%
   23Important_Verbs

Review[8]

12.4.2 Forming Questions

Do you remember the word order in questions and the most common question words?

Review[9]

12.4.3 Articles

Do you remember the definite and indefinite articles in German?

Review[10]

---

8   `http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/German%2FLevel%20I%2FBitte_buchstabieren_Sie%23The_German_Alphabet`

9   `http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/German%2FLevel%20I%2FBitte_buchstabieren_Sie%23Forming_Questions`

10   `http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/German%2FLevel%20I%2FBitte_buchstabieren_Sie%23Articles`

13 Section 1.02 ˜ Berlin, Germany

14 Lesson 1.04 - Kleidung

Figure 6   Gedächtniskirche auf dem Kurfürstendamm, Berlin

Lesson I.7: Kleidung

14.1 Hello from Berlin!

In every Lesson from 7 - 15 there is going to be a featured German-Speaking city, which will be the theme of the lesson. For 7 - 8 it is Berlin. There will be famous locations in Berlin, for this lesson it's Kurfürstendamm and KaDeWe, the shopping area of Berlin. Also in each lesson there will be facts, so if you ever travel to a German-Speaking country, it'll be like you are a native!

14.1.1 Facts

It's Time to Change Time

Berlin's time is GMT+1. That means that they are 6 hours ahead of E.S.T. If it's 2:00pm in New York City, it's 8:00pm (or 20:00) locally. Please note that Germany changes to and from daylight-saving time a few weeks before the U.S., so time differences still vary in March and October.

Tip, Tip, and More Tip

In contrast to many other countries where waiters sometime 'live on the tips' in German-speaking countries service personnel always receive a regular wage (usually per hour) and the tip is always an extra for good service. Not to give a tip will probably give the waiter the impression that either service or product were not that good and you are too polite to admit this, but not tipping is not considered 'rude'. If you tip you usually round up, up to 50 Cents for coffee or up to the next 5 euros for lunch, e.g. 2,70 € becomes 3,00 € and 21 € become 25 €. Also, tipping is only expected when you get served, i.e. when the service personnel bring something to your table, so if you pay at a counter – like at McDonald's or StarBucks – you don't tip at all. Only when having a large party, like celebrating your birthday in a restaurant, you do extra tipping. For a night you should pay 30 EUR to 80 EUR per waiter and give it separately to the manager ("für die Bedienung"). In many restaurants it is normal the tip is shared with the kitchen personnel. Paying with credit card or debit card makes tipping difficult, because there is no line on the bill to fill in the tip. Always tip when paying, don't leave money on the table.

Shopping Locations

There are two major shopping locations. The ***Kurfürstendamm*** in the old west is lined with boutiques and department stores. It continues eastwards for about three hundred yards where you can visit ***KaDeWe***, the biggest department store in Europe. On the newly-developed ***Friedrichstraße*** in the old east, the famous French store Galleries Lafayette is to be found together with a maze of underground shopping malls. Shops are generally open 9am-8pm Monday through Saturday. In the outskirts most shops close at 4pm on Saturdays.

14.2 Dialogue

Sarah	Morgen, Lisa.
Lisa	Morgen. Wie geht's dir?
Sarah	Gut, danke! Ich gehe zum Kurfürstendamm, möchtest du mitkommen?
Lisa	Ja, gerne. Ich hole vorher noch Geld.
Sarah	Ich sehe dich dann am Kurfürstendamm.
	am Kurfürstendamm
Sarah	Hallo Lisa!
Lisa	Hallo!
Sarah	Wohin gehen wir zuerst?
Lisa	Lass uns zu dieser Boutique gehen.
Sarah	O.K.
	in der Boutique
Angestellter Thomas	Hallo meine Damen!
Sarah und Lisa	Guten Tag!
Angestellter Thomas	Darf ich Ihnen helfen?
Lisa	Ja, können Sie mir helfen, diesen Rock in meiner Größe zu finden?
Angestellter Thomas	Natürlich.
Angestellter Thomas	Hier ist der Rock in Ihrer Größe.
Lisa	Danke. Wo ist die Umkleidekabine?
Angestellter Thomas	Dort drüben.

14.3 Shopping

There is a lot to say about shopping, places to shop at, money and items to buy. In this lesson we will cover most of it. There are two big shopping locations in Berlin. They are Kurfürstendamm and KaDeWe.

English	German
Babywear	die Babyartikel (plural)
Children's Wear	die Kinderbekleidung
(Children) department	die (Kinder-)Abteilung
Clearance Sale	der Räumungsverkauf
Closed	geschlossen
Clothing	die Kleidung
Computer Section	die Computerabteilung
Cosmetics	die Kosmetik (singular) die Kosmetika (plural)
Customer	der Kunde
Customer Service	der Kundendienst
Electrical Appliance	das Elektrogerät

English	German
Escalator	die Rolltreppe
Fashion	die Mode
Furniture	das Möbelstück (singular), die Möbel (plural)
Gift	der Geschenkartikel
Good Value (Adj.)	preiswert
Groceries	die Lebensmittel (plural)
Jewellery	der Schmuck (no plural)
Lady's Shoes	die Damenschuhe (plural)
Leather Goods	die Lederwaren (plural)
Open	geöffnet
Opening Hours	die Öffnungszeiten (plural)
Present	das Geschenk
Reduced	reduziert
price cut	die Preissenkung
Sales Receipt	der Kassenbon, der Kassenzettel, die Quittung
Souvenir	das Andenken
Special Offer	das Sonderangebot
Sporting Goods	die Sportartikel (plural)
Stationery	die Schreibwaren (plural)
Summer Sale	der Sommerschlussverkauf (abbr. SSV)
Video Store	die Videothek
Winter Sale	der Winterschlussverkauf (abbr. WSV)

14.3.1 Kurfürstendamm

- **Kurfürstendamm**

  Tauentzienstraße

  Fasanenstraße

The Kurfürstendamm has many boutiques, department stores, etc., which are on Tauentzienstraße and Fasanenstraße, two streets in Kurfürstendamm. Tauentzienstraße has a lot of the department stores, including KaDeWe, which we will get into greater detail later. Fasanenstraße has a lot of the boutiques.

English	German
Department Store	das Kaufhaus (old fashioned "das Warenhaus")
Retail Store	das Einzelhandelsgeschäft
The Mall	das Einkaufszentrum
Boutique	die Boutique
Store	das Geschäft

And some of the things you might say or ask while in a clothing store...

- *Können Sie mir helfen, meine Größe zu finden (für dieses _ _ _ _)?*

  Can you help me find my size (for this _ _ _ _)?

- *Wo ist die Umkleidekabine?*

Where is the dressing room?

English	German
Manager	der Manager
Employee	der/die Angestellte
Sales Clerk	der Verkäufer
Cashier	der Kassierer
Dressing Room	die Umkleidekabine
Men's Section	die Männerabteilung
Women's Section	die Frauenabteilung

Section Problems[1] >>

14.3.2 KaDeWe

Another shopping location is das KaDeWe, an upscale department store in Germany. It has six floors, and Is also called "The department store of the west" (Kaufhaus des Westens) because it is the largest and most magnificent department store on continental Europe.

English	German
First Floor	Erstes Stockwerk
Menswear	Männerkleidung
Second Floor	Zweiter Stock
Womenswear	Frauenkleidung
Third Floor	Dritter Stock
Kids Section	Kinderabteilung
Fourth Floor	Vierter Stock
Electronics	Elektronik
Kitchenware	Küchenbedarf
Fifth Floor	Fünfter Stock
Lighting	Beleuchtung
Bedding	Bettwäsche
Toys	Spielwaren
Sixth Floor	Sechster Stock
Food	Lebensmittel

Since we already have most of the general shopping phrases and vocabulary down, we are going to get into more detail in the next few sections.

Section Problems[2]>>

---

1   http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/%2FProblems%23Kurf.C3.BCrstendamm
2   http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/%2FProblems%23KaDeWe

Electronics

First is electronics: it might seem a little sparse, but electronics and much other stuff will be featured in Lesson 12.

English	German
Electronics	die Elektronik
Television	das Fernsehen/der Fernseher, die Fernseher (plural)
Digital Camera	die Digitalkamera, die Digitalkameras
Telephone	das Telefon, die Telefone
Cell phone	das Mobiltelefon/das Handy (pronounced "Hendee"), die Mobiltelefone/Handys
Computer	der Computer/der Rechner, die Computer/Rechner
Speaker, Speakers	der Lautsprecher, die Lautsprecher
DVDs	die DVDs (singular: die DVD)
CDs	die CDs (singular: die CD)
DVD Player	der DVD-Player
CD Player	der CD-Player

Spielt der DVD-Player auch CDs?

 Does the DVD player also play CDs?

Hat das Mobiltelefon/das Handy eine Digitalkamera?

 Does the cell phone have a digital camera?

If you look at the word order of this sentence, you will see that you've already learned everything you need to make these sentences, and you, yourself can customize these sentences if you want.

Section Problems[3]>>

Bedding

The bedding section is also quite bare, but that is because it will be discussed further in Lesson 12.

English	German
Bedding	die Bettwäsche
Blanket	die Decke, die Decken
Pillow	das Kopfkissen/das/der Polster (Austrian German), die Kopfkissen/Polster
Pillow Case	der Kopfkissenbezug, die Kopfkissenbezüge
Sheet	das Betttuch, die Betttücher
Bed Skirt	der Bett-Rock

And like always here are some of the things you might say that are related to bedding.

---

3   http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/%2FProblems%23Electronics

- *Passen die Kopfkissenbezüge auf das Kopfkissen?*

  Does the pillow case fit the pillow?

And with that question there are other variations of it you can ask, like...

- *Passt die Decke auf das Bett?*

  Does the blanket fit the bed?

Section Problems[4]>>

14.4 Money

Germany, Austria, Luxemburg, Belgium and Südtirol – in other words: all German speaking regions except Switzerland and Liechtenstein– have given up their former currencies and adopted the Euro as of 1999. Because they are not members of the European Union, Switzerland and Liechtenstein have kept the Swiss Francs. Currently 1 EUR is 1.34 USD.

Now if you were at a shopping center in German like Kurfürstendamm, and you were shopping at a boutique here is some vocabulary you might want to know.

- *Was macht das?*

Was kostet das?

  How much does it cost?

- *Das Hemd kostet 120 Euro.*

  The shirt costs 120 euros.

- *Das kostet 690 Euro.*

  That costs 690 euros (all together).

English	German
Price	der Preis
Note	der Schein
Coin	die Münze
1 Euro coin	das Eurostück, das Ein-Euro-Stück
2 Euro coin	das Zweieurostück
5 Euro note	der Fünfeuroschein
10 Euro note	der Zehneuroschein
100 Euro note	der Hunderteuroschein

Note: The word coin (Münze) mostly turns to Stück when a word or number is put together with it.

---

4   http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/%2FProblems%23Bedding

Even though in the vocabulary we list the 1, 2, 5, 10, 100 Euro there are more Euro notes. The twenty, fifty, two hundred, and five hundred Euro notes are the ones we didn't list, also there are cent coins.

English	German
1 Cent Coin	das Centstück
2 Cent Coin	das Zweicentstück
5 Cent Coin	das Fünfcentstück
10 Cent Coin	das Zehncentstück
20 Cent Coin	das Zwanzigcentstück
50 Cent Coin	das Fünfzigcentstück

14.4.1 German Math

In written German, a comma is used (e. g. in prices) where we would put a decimal point in English. Thus € 5,49 (or 5,49 €) means *five euros and forty-nine cents.* When a price ends in a round number of euros, it is most commonly written as € 5,- etc. The reverse is also true. Where as English uses a comma to split up large numbers, German uses a dot. So "€ 6.945" means **sechs tausend neunhundertfünfundvierzig** (six thousand nine hundred and forty-five) euros - not *six point nine four five euros.*

14.5 Clothing

English	German
Skirt	der Rock, die Röcke (plural)
Pullover	der Pullover, die Pullover
Sweatshirt	das Sweatshirt, die Sweatshirts
Scarf	der Schal, die Schale/Schals
Jacket	die Jacke, die Jacken
Coat	der Mantel, die Mäntel
Shirt	das Hemd, die Hemden
T-shirt	das T-Shirt, die T-Shirts
Sweater	der Sweater, die Sweater
(Neck)tie	die Krawatte, die Krawatten
Bowtie	die Fliege, die Fliegen
Suit	der Anzug, die Anzüge
Pants	die Hose, die Hosen (note: "die Hose IST"="the (pair of) pants ARE")
Underpants	die Unterhose, die Unterhosen
Boxershorts	die Boxershorts (plural)
Top	das Top
Bra	der Büstenhalter/der Busenhalter (abbr. BH), die Büstenhalter/Busenhalter
Swimming costume	der Badeanzug, die Badeanzüge
Trunks	die Badehose, die Badehosen
Hat	der Hut, die Hüte

English	German
Shoe	der Schuh, die Schuhe
Sock	die Socke, die Socken
Stocking	der Strumpf, die Strümpfe
Tights/Pantyhose	die Strumpfhose, die Strumpfhosen
Glove	der Handschuh, die Handschuhe
Blouse	die Bluse, die blusen
Cap	die Mütze, die Mützen
Woollen hat	die Wollmütze, die Wollmützen

English	German
Size	die Größe, die Größen
Color	die Farbe, die Farben
Cotton	die Baumwolle
Leather	das Leder
Rayon	die Kunstseide

English	German
Small	klein (abbr. S)
Medium	mittel (abbr. M)
Large	groß (abbr. L)
Extra-Large	extragroß (abbr. XL)

Section Answers[5] >>

14.5.1 Describing Clothes

Here are some of the words you can use when you are describing clothes:

English	German
Cheap	günstig, billig
Expensive	teuer
Pretty	schön
Ugly	hässlich
Soft	weich
New	neu
Broad	breit
Wide	weit
Tight	eng
Comfortable	bequem
Uncomfortable	unbequem

To say I like something or not, for clothing, it's...

---

5   http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/%2FProblems%23Clothing

I like it!

Er/Sie/Es gefällt mir!

I don't like it!

Er/Sie/Es gefällt mir nicht!

Now if you try something on or you're looking for a soft shirt with a tight fit, you find it, feel it, try it on, but it's fairly expensive you might say this...

In English: *The shirt looks great! The shirt feels soft, fits tight. The shirt is very comfortable. How much does it cost? Oh no! The shirt is expensive! 55 euros is a little too much for me.*

In German: *Das Hemd sieht prima aus! Das Hemd fühlt sich weich an, es sitzt eng. Das Hemd ist sehr bequem. Wieviel kostet es? Oh nein! Das Hemd ist teuer! 55 Euro sind mir ein bisschen zuviel.*

The phrases to describe the shirt were...

The shirt looks great.

*Das Hemd **sieht**prima **aus.***

The shirt feels soft.

*Das Hemd **fühlt**sich weich **an**.*

The shirt fits tight.

*Das Hemd **sitzt**eng.*

Now, the bold words are verbs that are one part in describing how the shirt is. The other half of describing it is the adjectives like soft, tight, great, etc. And as you can see the verb "looks" is separable, but we will get into that later.

14.5.2 Clothing-Related Verbs

And now getting into verbs - here are some of the verbs, and also some of these are Separable-Prefix Verbs, like aussehen, anprobieren, and anhaben. But we will study those in more detail later. Also we will be learning about "tragen".

English	German
To look	aussehen
He looks	Er sieht aus
To try on	anprobieren
He tries on	Er probiert an
to put on	anziehen
He puts on	Er zieht an
To take	nehmen
To buy	kaufen
To have on/wear	anhaben, tragen
He has on/wears	Er hat an

14.6 Separable Prefix Verbs

Many German verbs change their meaning by adding prefixs, which are often preposition such as **ab-, an-, auf-, aus-, bei-, ein-, mit-, vor-,** or **zu-**.The verbs *anhaben* (to wear) and *aussehen* (to look) are both verbs with **separable** (*trennbar*) prefixes. That is, when used next to the subject pronoun, the prefix is separated from the verb and put at the end of the sentence or clause. Or, better put, In the present tense and imperative, the prefix is separated from the infinitive stem.

Examples:

"Ich habe einen Mantel an." ("I'm wearing a coat." Or, more literally translated, "I have a coat on.")

"Was hast du an?" ("What are you wearing?" or "What do you have on?")

However, when the separable-prefix verb is put at the end of the sentence, such as when used with a modal verb, the verb in question and its prefix are not separated.

Examples:

"Du willst einen Mantel anhaben." ("You want to wear a coat.")

"Willst du eine Bluse anhaben?" ("Do you want to wear a blouse?")

Section Problems[6] >>

14.7 Tragen

Instead of *"anhaben"* the verb *"tragen"* is often used. The sentences from above would then be:

"Ich trage einen Mantel." ("I'm wearing a coat.")

"Was trägst du?" ("What are you wearing?")

"Du willst einen Mantel tragen." ("You want to wear a coat.")

"Willst du eine Bluse tragen?" ("Do you want to wear a blouse?")

The verb *"tragen"* has two meanings: "to wear" and "to carry". So if someone says *"Ich trage Schuhe"* only the context will tell you whether the person is carrying the shoes in his hands or actually wearing them. Tragen is a different kind of irregular verb -- one that not only changes at the end of the word, but also changes internally. Notice that the vowel in tragen's second and third-person forms changes from an **a** into an **ä**. Other verbs with similar conjugation patterns include **fahren, graben, schaffen,** and **waschen.**

---

6   http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/%2FProblems%23Separable%20Prefix%20Verbs

Person	Singular		Plural	
1st	ich	*trage*	wir	*tragen*
2nd	du	*trägst*	ihr	*tragt*
3rd	er/sie/es	*trägt*	sie	*tragen*

14.8 Colors

Color are also another great way to describe clothes like *Das rote Hemd passt gut.*which means The red shirt fits well.

Read the following paragraph, try to find the words described to have a color.

Wir fahren in den Schwarzwald. Ich habe ein grünes Hemd getragen. Die Reise war lang. Es begann kälter zu werden und abzukühlen. Ich hörte Musik auf meinem braunen iPod. Ich bin schließlich eingeschlafen. Als ich aufwachte, sah ich den blauen Himmel und den weißen Schnee.

If you found 5 words you are right.

Schwarz which means black (the Schwarzwald (Black Forest) is a wooded mountain range)

Grünes Hemd which is a green shirt.

Brauner iPod which is a brown iPod.

Blauer Himmel which is blue sky.

And weißer Schnee which is white snow.

And now for the actual colors...

```
Red             "Rot"
Blue            "Blau"
Green           "Grün"
Orange          "Orange"
Violet          "Violett"
Yellow          "Gelb"
Brown           "Braun"
Indigo          "Indigo"
Gray            "Grau"
Black           "Schwarz"
White           "Weiß"
```

Section Problems[7] >>

---

7   http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/%2FProblems%23Colors

15 Lesson 1.05 - Volk und Familie

Figure 7   Brandenburg Gate in Berlin

Lesson I.8: Familie und Nationalität

15.1 Hello from Berlin!

15.1.1 Facts

Banks and Money

Germany's main banks are Deutsche Bank, Dresdner Bank and Commerzbank. There are many banks of all kinds throughout the country. Banks are open Mon-Fri 9am-12pm and 2:30-4pm. On Thursdays, they are open until 5:30 or 6pm. Changing money is best done at a bank because their rates will be better than exchange services located at a Bureau de Change. Major post office branches and travel agents also offer currency exchange. Germany is one of 15 European countries that have replaced their national currencies with the Euro, which is stronger to the U.S. Dollar, but weaker than the British Pound.

15.2 Dialog

	Vater, Mutter und die Geschwister bekommen Besuch von Oma und Opa
Vater Karl	Hallo Mama, Hallo Papa! Wie geht es euch?
Opa Rudolf	Na mein Enkel, du bist ja richtig groß geworden!
Oma Lisa	Mir geht's gut. Ich gehe zum Kurfürstendamm. Möchtet ihr mit mir kommen?
Sohn Thomas	Ja, Opa, ich weiß.
Tochter Marie	Oma! Hast du uns etwas mitgebracht?
Mutter Bettina	Nun sei nicht so aufgeregt Marie, lass Oma und Opa erst einmal hereinkommen.
	kurze Zeit später, die Geschenke wurden schon ausgepackt...
Tochter Marie	Mutti! Thomas nimmt mir immer meine Puppe weg.
Mutter Bettina	Thomas! Du sollst deiner Schwester nicht ihre Puppe wegnehmen.
Sohn Thomas	Nein, das ist meine Puppe.
Mutter Bettina	Nein. Die Puppe gehört deiner Schwester.
Sohn Thomas	Gut, hier hast du die Puppe...
Mutter Bettina	Und bedanke dich bei deinen Großeltern, Marie.

15.3 People

15.3.1 The Family

Home is where the heart is, they say. And what is in the home? Family! of course, so this is a very important section of the lesson. It'll give all vocabulary for the family, and later in a different section, you'll learn how to describe your brothers and sisters or any person! And now to get started lets do some vocabulary...

English	German
Son	der Sohn, die Söhne (plural)
Daughter	die Tochter, die Töchter
Father	der Vater, die Väter
Mother	die Mutter, die Mütter
Dad	der Papa (informal), der Vati/der Papi (informal)
Mum	die Mama (informal), die Mutti/die Mami (informal)
Grandfather	der Großvater, die Großväter
Grandmother	die Großmutter, die Großmütter
Grandpa	der Opa, die Opas
Grandma	die Oma, die Omas
Sister	die Schwester, die Schwestern
Brother	der Bruder, die Brüder

English	German
English	German
Siblings	die Geschwister
Grandson	der Enkel/der Enkelsohn, die Enkelsöhne
Granddaughter	die Enkelin, die Enkelinnen
Wife	die Ehefrau, die Frau (informal), die Gattin (formal)
Husband	der Ehemann, der Mann (informal), der Gatte (formal)
Father-in-law	der Schwiegervater
Mother-in-law	die Schwiegermutter
Brother-in-law	der Schwager, die Schwagern
Sister-in-law	die Schwägerin, die Schwägerinnen
Son-in-law	der Schwiegersohn, die Schwiegersöhne
Daughter-in-law	die Schwiegertochter, die Schwiegertöchter
Uncle	der Onkel, die Onkel
Aunt	die Tante, die Tanten

Now even though many of these are common phrases you and I would say in everyday life, some of these are rather used when you are on a visit to grandmother's, or things your mother would say. Maybe you notice some of these in the dialogue. Now you might be asking "How am I going to speak fluent German, if I just learn phrases?" Like I said, these are basically from the dialogue, and you can study these to look at the word order. Also certain things are just different in German, like "Wie heißt du?" which translates literally to "How are you called?" when we use "What is your name?". Okay let's get started on these common phrases...

Du bist ja richtig groß geworden.

You have grown up so much (usual sentence used by Opa und Oma)

Hast du uns etwas mitgebracht?

Have you brought something for us?

Nun sei nicht so aufgeregt.

Now don't be so excited.

Komm rein.

Come in.

(Sie) Wurden schon ausgepackt.

(They) Have already been opened.

(Sich) Bedanken für etwas.

To thank for something.

Using Formal and Informal Pronouns in the Family

Some very conservative families might still use **Sie** with grandparents or even parents! This is sometimes practiced in families of nobility or exterritorial cultural islands in which

older German customs have survived. However, using "Sie" feels very outdated to the vast majority of people. In practically every family all members use **du** with each other.

15.3.2 Describing People

I can't describe in words how important this section of the lesson is. Even though you have already learned to describe to some degree, here we will introduce a new aspect of describing, and we will review. But how could we describe if we didn't have vocabulary? Here it is...

English	German
Nice	nett, sympathisch
Mean	unfreundlich, gemein
Nasty	fies, gemein
Pretty	schön
Ugly	hässlich
Intelligent	intelligent
Unintelligent	unintelligent
Clever	schlau, klug, clever
Stupid	dumm/blöd/deppert (Austrian German)
Interesting	interessant
Boring	langweilig, fad (Austrian German)
Active	rührig, aktiv
Lazy	faul
Funny	komisch, witzig
Serious	ernst(haft)
Strong	stark, kräftig
Weak	schwach
Odd	eigenartig
Talented	begabt, talentiert
Untalented	unbegabt, untalentiert
Bossy	rechthaberisch
Passive	untätig
Old	alt
Young	jung
Fat	fett, dick
Skinny	dünn
Tall	groß
Short	klein
Evil	böse

The verb used most often for describing is "*to be*" which we learned in the first lesson. Some examples are: *He **is**wet, This **is**stupid, I **am**lazy.* But you do use other verbs like feel, look, etc. This lesson we will be sticking mostly with the verbs we've learned in the past. We will, however, learn one new verb. All sentences we will create will be in the nominative case. Okay, let's get started!

In term of beauty, you can say four basic things. These aren't the all but these are the easiest and simplest ones.

She is beautiful.

Sie ist schön.

He is ugly.

Er ist hässlich.

These two use the verb *to be*, and the next one will use the verb *to look* which would need something else in order to make sense.

She looks beautiful, but that shirt is ugly.

Sie sieht schön aus, aber dieses Hemd ist hässlich.

He looks ugly, but he looked handsome yesterday.

Er sieht hässlich aus, aber gestern sah er schön aus.

And in the last sentence it says "ausgesehen." Don't worry about that--it wouldn't be taught until Level 3. So since you get the idea of describing, let's learn a new verb! And the new verb is **klingen** which is *to sound.* As in "He sounds weird.", "She sounds boring." Since we know how to describe, we really don't have to cover it. It's works just like other verbs.

He sounds nice.

Er klingt nett.

They sound funny.

Sie klingen komisch.

Remember that when describing it's S+V+A, or subject, verb, then adjective. Exactly like in English. For right now, that's all for describing things. We are going to have some small describing lessons with some parts of this lesson.

15.3.3 Related Verbs

Okay we just went over the verb in the previous section. This will basically be a list that will help you memorize them better, and there is not a lot. Other than "**klingen**" and "**fühlen**" you should know all of these. The "Er sieht aus" is to show you it is a separable-prefix verb.

English	German
To be	sein
To look	aussehen, ausschauen (Austrian German)
He looks	Er sieht aus
To feel	(sich) fühlen
To sound	klingen

15.3.4 Nationality

This is also a large section of this lesson: nationality, and it's very important. There are many nationalities, too many to go over in this lesson, but you will learn more nationality as this level and book goes on. Right now we are just going to have a vague little list, and as this section goes on there will be more. Finally, gentlemen, get ready to have your minds blown...

Some Nationalities

This is the small list, make sure you memorize this list and the next one.

English	German
German(s)	(masculine) der Deutsche, (m. plural) die Deutschen; (feminine) die Deutsche, (f. plural) die Deutschen
American(s)	der Amerikaner, die Amerikaner; die Amerikanerin, die Amerikanerinnen
Englishman	der Engländer, die Engländer; die Engländerin, die Engländerinnen
Spaniard(s)	der Spanier, die Spanier; die Spanierin, die Spanierinnen
Italian(s)	der Italiener, die Italiener; die Italienerin, die Italienerinnen
Frenchman	der Franzose, die Franzosen; die Französin, die Französinnen

Describing People with Nationality

It is no surprise you can describe people with nationality, most times, it's stereotypical, like Norwegians are blonde, tall, etc. or Germans wear lederhosen, drink beer, and play polka all day long, but that is just not true. However you can just use it for what it is, a nationality. If you do describe people by nationality this will help. Okay, you should already know how to describe, right?

This part we will get more in to detail later, but right it is an important part of describing people with nationality, even though in English we most times don't do this, in German they do. The difference between nationality and language, like in English, **French** *and* **French**. But in German it is **französisch** *and* **Franzose, Französin**. This also is how it works for nationality describing by noun or adjective, which we are going to learn right now.

Noun or Adjective Nationality

There are two ways to describe someone. With a noun-based nationality word or an adjective-based nationality word. But note that in German the noun-based form is used more often.

*Example: Ich bin **Schwede** (I am Swedish) and Ich bin **schwedisch** (I am Swedish)*

*Example: Ich bin **Franzose** (I am French) and Ich bin **französisch** (I am French)*

More Nationalities

A longer list of nationalities found in and around Germany:

African	(m.) Afrikaner (-); (f.) Afrikanerin (-nen)
Albanian	Albaner (-); Albanerin (-nen)
Austrian	Österreicher (-); Österreicherin (-nen)
Czech	Tscheche (-n); Tschechin (-nen)
Chinese	Chinese (-n); Chinesin (-nen)
Dane	Däne (-n); Dänin (-nen)
Dutchman/woman	Holländer (-); Holländerin (-nen)
Estonian	Este (-n); Estin (-nen)
Finnish	Finne (-n); Finnin (-nen)
Greek	Grieche (-n); Griechin (-nen)
Hungarian	Ungar (-n); Ungarin (nen)
Irish	Ire (-n); Irin (-nen)
Indian	Inder (-); Inderin (-nen)
Japanese	Japaner (-); Japanerin (-nen)
Korean	Koreaner (-); Koreanerin (-nen)
Latvian	Lette (-n); Lettin (-nen)
Lithuanian	Litauer (-); Litauerin (-nen)
Norwegian	Norweger (-); Norwegerin (-nen)
Polish	Pole (-n); Polin (-nen)
Romanian	Rumäne (-n); Rumänin (-nen)
Russian	Russe (-n); Russin (-nen)
Serbian	Serbe (-n); Serbin (-nen)
Slovakian	Slovake (-n); Slovakin (-nen)
Swede	Schwede (-n); Schwedin (-nen)
Swiss	Schweizer (-); Schweizerin (-nen)
Turkish	Türke (-n); Türkin (-nen)
Ukrainian	Ukrainer (-); Ukrainerin (-nen)

15.3.5 Age

Now we are all familiar with the word "***alt***", *which means*old. *And in English, to find out somebody's age we ask* "**How old are you?**". *In German it is exactly the same. The "*alt *" kind of belongs to the interrogative adverb, so in both German and English it may be in front of the verb:*

Wie alt bist du?

How old are you?

Now to ask the question with 1st person it is...

Wie alt bin ich?

How old am I?

And as response you might get...

Ich bin _ _ Jahre alt.

I am _ _ years old.

Du bist _ _ Jahre alt.

You are _ _ years old.

And now the plural version of the 1st person...

Wie alt sind wir?

How old are we?

The responses you will get is...

Wir sind _ _ Jahre alt.

We are _ _ years old.

Ihr seid _ _ Jahre alt.

You all are _ _ years old.

To ask this important question in the 2nd person. First, we will learn the biggest question here, "*How old are you?*" which is...

Wie alt bist du?

How old are you?

And there is only one response to this it is...

Ich bin _ _ Jahre alt.

I am _ _ years old.

For the equally important plural 2nd person...

Wie alt seid ihr?

How old are you all?

Which the response is...

Wir sind _ _ Jahre alt.

We are _ _ years old.

And formal question, for both singular and plural is...

Wie alt sind Sie?

How old are you?

How old are you all?

You should all ready get the pattern for this, but we are going to keep on doing this list, if you aren't sure of something or you are confused. So for the 3rd person...

Wie alt ist er/sie?

How old is he/she?

The responses to this are...

Er ist _ _ Jahre alt.

He is _ _ years old.

Sie ist _ _ Jahre alt.

She is _ _ years old.

And now the plural 3rd person of question and response...

Wie alt sind sie?

How old are they?

And of course the response...

Sie sind _ _ Jahre alt.

They _ _ years old.

Now with some people you might be able to guess their age, and you could ask them directly about it. This is usually pretty of rude, but it illustrates nicely how the phrase has to be changed if you ask a yes-no-question, so let's get started, anyway!

Bist du _ _ Jahre alt?

Are you _ _ years old?

Ist er/sie _ _ Jahre alt?

Is he/she _ _ years old?

Sind sie _ _ Jahre alt?

Are they _ _ years old?

Note the inversed order between "Wie alt bist du?" und "Bist du _ _ Jahre alt?" This is exactly the same as in English!

15.4 Possessives

Singular

Person	English	German
1st	my	*mein*
2nd	your	*dein, Ihr*
3rd	his, her, its	*sein, ihr, sein*

Plural

English	German
our	*unser*
your	*euer, Ihr*
their	*ihr*

Note: 'Euer' is irregular. When 'euer' has to have a different ending the **e** before **r** is dropped, so it turns into 'eur-'.

15.4.1 Gender, Case, and Endings

15.5 Expressing Favorites

Problems[1] >>

---

1   http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/%2FProblems

16 Lesson 1.06 - Schule

Lesson I.9: Schule

16.1 Hello from Berlin!

16.1.1 School in Germany

- School is not regulated nationwide, but by each Land
- German "Kindergarten" is optional - it translates rather to "play school", "Vorschule" being roughly the equivalent to "Kindergarten"
- From the age of six on, all Germans attend a "Grundschule" (elementary school) for four or six years, depending on the Land.
- After that, they go to either
  - the "Hauptschule" which is industrially oriented,
  - the "Realschule", which is skill oriented,
  - the "Gymnasium", which is academically oriented,
  - or the "Gesamtschule", or comprehensive school.
- Schooling is obligatory until the age of 16, but the Gymnasium diploma "Abitur" can only be obtained after 12 or 13 years, i.e. at age 18 or 19.
- Latin and sometimes even ancient Greek are regularly taught at the Gymnasium. For the "Abitur", at least two foreign languages as well as some calculus and analysis classes have to be taken.
- School days often are from 8:00-13:00. In most 'Länder', only the older students have additional classes between about 14:00-15:30 (i.e. 8AM - 1PM and 2PM - 3:30PM)
- In most schools, Extracurricular Activities are offered, such as Drama Club or School Choir, but they are less common than in the U.S. Though many students feel some sort of identification with their school, most are just happy when they can go home.
- Generally speaking, many schools still are more formal than US or Canadian schools.
- The marking system uses
  - 1 (very good, 87,5% or 96%),
  - 2 (good 75% or 85%), **
  - 3 (satisfactory, 62,5% or 65%),
  - 4 (sufficient 50% or 45%).
  - 5 (faulty) is failed or 25%.
  - 6 (not sufficient) is only used when the student literally hands in a blank sheet or failed.
- These marks can be modified with a "+" or a "-" to indicate a tendency, so e.g. 2+ is a fairly good mark that corresponds to about 80%.

16.2 Dialogue

```
Silke: Jetzt haben wir Mathe.
Torsten: Oh nein, ich habe überhaupt keine Lust dazu.
Silke: Hast du die Aufgaben gemacht?
Torsten: Ja, im Bus.
Silke: Super! Kann ich sie abschreiben?
```

```
Lehrer (Betritt den Raum): Guten Morgen!
Klasse: Guten Morgen!
```

```
Lehrer: Wer möchte die Aufgaben an der Tafel rechnen? Florian?
Florian geht zur Tafel, schreibt an und liest vor:
    "5 plus 8 ist gleich 13"
    "8 minus 5 ist gleich 3"
    "3 mal 8 ist gleich 24"
    "24 geteilt durch 12 ist gleich 2"
Lehrer: Sehr gut, Florian!
```

```
Die Glocke läutet. Es ist Fünfminutenpause.
Silke: Schnell, wir müssen zu Musik!
Torsten: Au ja, darauf freue ich mich schon.
Silke: Was machen wir heute?
Torsten: Wir wollen ein Lied von Grönemeyer singen!
Silke: Welches denn?
Torsten: "Alkohol", glaube ich.
```

```
Nach dem Musikunterricht:
Silke: Jetzt haben wir nur noch Geschichte...
Torsten: Komm, wir schwänzen und gehen ins Bistro.
Silke: Schon wieder!
```

16.3 Und Satz für Satz ...

```
Oh nein, ich habe überhaupt keine Lust dazu.
```

"Lust (zu etwas) haben" means "feeling like (it)". "Ich habe keine Lust (dazu)" is "I don't feel like (it)". "Ich habe *überhaupt* keine Lust" emphasizes it, meaning "I don't feel like it at all."

```
Hast du die Aufgaben gemacht?
Have you the tasks done?
```

"Did you do your homework?"

```
Ja, im Bus.
Yes, in the bus.
```

This is a common practice of students everywhere in the world, I guess...

Notice the contraction of "im", which is derived from "in dem", "in the".

```
    Super! Kann ich sie noch schnell abschreiben?
    Super! Can I just quickly copy them?
```

"Super", "Cool", "Toll", are common exclamations ... "Noch schnell" is here meant as "while there is still time"

```
    Lehrer (Betritt den Raum): Guten Morgen!
    Teacher (enters the room): Good Morning!

    Klasse: Guten Morgen!
    Class: Good Morning!

    Wer möchte die Aufgaben an der Tafel rechnen? Florian?
    Who would like the tasks on the blackboard calculate?
```

"Who would like to do these questions on the blackboard?" Note that "Tafel" is related to "table", meaning a flat surface, and indeed German "Tafel" can also designate a table prepared for a feast.

Don't let the weird order of the words disturb you, even if the phrase seems totally incomprehensible at first. I'll try to construct this bit by bit:

This is the basic question and answer pair:

```
    "Wer rechnet?" - "Ich rechne."
    "Who calculates?" - "I calculate."
```

To ask, if you want to do something, you use a construction similar to English:

```
    "Wer will rechnen" - "Ich will rechnen."
    "Who wants to calculate" - "I want to calculate."
```

Note that the "to" is already included in the German word "rechnen". "Rechnen" is clearly already an infinitive, and doesn't need a "zu" to prove it. This is one of the main reasons why complicated conjugations can survive, they contain information that doesn't have to be expressed otherwise then...

To be a little more polite (or at least seem like it, since our teacher probably wouldn't take a no for an answer)

```
    "Wer möchte rechnen?" - "Ich möchte rechnen!"
    "Who would like to calculate?" - "I would like to calculate"
```

This is another example for brevity by conjugation. The word "möchte" contains the "would", as it is a "Konjunktiv"-form of the word "mögen" which translates to "like". Don't be discouraged, many Germans don't realize this, and many don't use the Konjunktiv correctly, if ever. However, "ich möchte"-phrases are extremely popular, so just use them, even if you didn't understand yet a word of the explanation above ;-)

Let's introduce objects in our phrase:

```
"Wer rechnet die Aufgabe?" - "Ich rechne die Aufgabe"
"Who calculates the task?" - "I calculate the task", meaning "Who answers the
question"
```

This is a direct object, "Aufgabe" is in the accusative case. Because this is a feminine noun, this is not so obvious, but the structure is the same as in:

```
"Wer sieht den Mann?" - "Ich sehe den Mann."
"Who sees the man?" - "I see the man."
```

Now, we also have an adverbial expression of the place. This is an expression that defines the verb, thus ad-verbial.

```
"Wer rechnet an der Tafel?" - "Ich rechne an der Tafel"
"Who calculates on the blackboard?" - "I calculate on the blackboard"
```

Now let's put all this together:

```
"Wer rechnet die Aufgabe an der Tafel?" - "Ich rechne die Aufgabe an der
Tafel."
"Who calculates the task on the blackboard?" - "I calculate the task on the
blackboard"
```

Note that the order expressions is widely interchangeable. You can emphasize something by putting it closer to the end of the question.

And now for the whole phrase in all its glory:

```
"Wer | möchte | die Aufgabe | an der Tafel | rechnen?" - "Ich | möchte | die
Aufgabe | an der Tafel | rechnen."
"Who | would like | the task | on the blackboard | calculate?" - "I | would
like | the task | on the blackboard | calculate."
```

It wasn't THAT bad, was it?

```
Florian geht zur Tafel, schreibt an und liest vor:
Florian goes to the blackboard, writes on and reads out:
```

"Florian goes to the blackboard, writes down and reads out aloud"

"zur" is another contraction, this time of "zu" and "der". Note that after "zu" follows the dative case, so "der" is not the masculine but the feminine article.

"anschreiben" splits to "schreibt an", and means literally "writing on". It is often used when writing legibly on a large, visible surface such as blackboard or a flipchart.

"vorlesen" splits to "liest vor" and translates to "read aloud".

```
    "5 plus 8 ist gleich 13"
    "8 minus 5 ist gleich 3"
    "3 mal 8 ist 24"
    "24 geteilt durch 12 gleich 2"
```

So, as you might have guessed, plus and minus are the same as in English - they are just pronounced German. The verbs "addieren" and "subtrahieren" are probably not difficult either... "Ist gleich" or short "gleich" or just "ist" corresponds obviously to "is equal to" or "equals".

"mal" means "times". This is also used in every day phrases, such as "100mal habe ich dir gesagt ..." "I told you a 100 times ..." The corresponding verb is "malnehmen" or "multiplizieren"

"geteilt durch" is literally "divided by", and the verb is "teilen" or "dividieren".

Lehrer: Sehr gut, Florian! Very good, Florian!

Now, that was easy!

```
    Die Glocke läutet. Es ist Fünfminutenpause.
    The bell rings. It is five-minute-break
```

Between single classes, there is usually a break of five minutes to allow teachers and students to go from one classroom to another. In most schools, classes such as German, English, History, Philosophy are taught in the classroom. Classes that use special equipment, such as all sciences, music and arts and of course computers and sport are being taught in a specialized lab classes. Roughly every second break is 15 minutes long, and if there are lessons in the afternoon, there's often a break of 45 to 60 minutes for lunch.

```
    Schnell, wir müssen zu Musik!
    Quick, we must to music!
```

This sentence sounds strange. This is, because in everyday German, sometimes the verb *gehen* can be left out, if it is clear what is meant. In this case, the complete phrase would have to be "Wir müssen zu Musik *gehen*". But since Torsten will not think Silke is going to fly there, there will be no misunderstanding. Additionally, the word "class", or "course" is missing, which is the usual way of students to talk about their subjects.

Note: In English, the phrase might be "We *have to* go to the music room" instead of *must*. The German translation "Wir haben in den Musikraum zu gehen" would be understood, but is quite formal. Additionally, there is a connotation that the speaker distances himself from the order he is being given.

```
    Au ja, darauf freue ich mich schon!
    Oh yes, to this look forward I myself already!
```

Whew, what was that?

Let's start at the beginning. "Au ja" ist an exclamation meaning "cool", "that's great". It has nothing to do with the German equivalent of "ouch!", which is "au(a)!"

"Sich freuen" means "being happy". It is *reflexive* such as in "I help myself", because the subject and the object are the same. Some phrases simply are constructed like this, even if there seems to be no real reason to this, and many languages know this phenomenon. The "sich" here is technically the accusative of "he, she, it" and is being changed depending on the person:

```
ich freue mich              I am happy
du freust dich              you are happy
er, sie, es freut sich      he, she, it is happy
wir freuen uns              we are happy
ihr freut euch              you are happy
Sie/sie freuen sich         they are happy
```

Note that "to be happy" actually would be rather translated by "glücklich sein", but it is the closest English equivalent to "sich freuen".

"Sich *über etwas* freuen" means "to be happy *about something*". This is kind of self-explanatory. But "sich *auf etwas* freuen", literally "to be happy *on something*" means "to look forward to". This is a common phrase that uses the *on* in the same wide sense as in "*on* drugs", or "living *on* something" - there is no spatial relation here...

In "darauf" you recognize the "auf". The "da" is a demonstrative prounoun such as in "*that* place". "Darauf" actually is another contraction which developed a long time ago from "da-herauf". The "darauf" is referencing the word "Musik" from Silke's sentence.

So "Au ja, darauf freue ich mich schon" or "to-this look-forward I myself already" just means "Great, I'm already looking forward to that"

Maybe it comforts you a little that the English phrase in a word-by-word translation to German would be just as unintelligible...

```
Was machen wir heute?
What make we today?
```

"What we (are going to) do today?" Note again, that "machen" often does not translate to "make", but to "do"!

```
Wir wollen ein Lied von Grönemeyer singen!
We want a song of Grönemeyer sing!
```

"We want to sing a song by Grönemeyer!"

```
Welches denn?
Which then?
```

```
"Alkohol", glaube ich...
"Alcohol", believe I...
```

Note that adding a "glaube ich" is another common phrase, exacly as "I think" or "I believe" can be added to an English phrase. (Never mind the word order, this is because Alcohol *is* the object, so the verb is at the second position in the text)

Herbert Grönemeyer[1] is a very popular German rock singer from the Ruhr region. His most famous songs include "Männer", "Bochum" (a city in the Ruhr region), "Mensch" and also "Alkohol".

```
Nach dem Musikunterricht:
After the music class:
```

"Unterricht" comes from "unterrichten" "to teach", and means simply "class". Better not think about "under" and "right" here, which you might have correctly recognized as the word's components "richten" literally means "to correct".

```
Jetzt haben wir nur noch Geschichte...
Now have we only still history...
```

"Now we have only history left"

```
Komm, wir schwänzen und gehen ins Bistro.
Come, we skip and go in the bistro.
```

"Come on, let's skip class and go to the bistro instead". As in English, "Komm" can be used to motivate others.

There is yet another contraction here "ins" is derived from "in das", meaning "in the". "das" is the neutral article in accusative case here.

```
Schon wieder!
Already again!
```

16.4 Aufgabe

- Make a list of all the contractions used in this chapter. Can you determine the full tables?

---

1   http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Herbert%20Gr%C3%B6nemeyer

16.5 School

16.5.1 Vocabulary

School-Related Verbs

Lesen	To Read
Schreiben	To Write
Rechnen	To Calculate (doing maths)
Studieren	To Study
Lernen	To Learn
Zeichnen	To Draw
Malen	To Paint

School Subjects

Deutsch	German
Englisch	English
Russisch	Russian
Französisch	French
Latein	Latin
Mathe	Maths
Mathematik	Mathematics
Sport	PE or Gym
Kunst, Zeichnen	Arts
Musik	Music
Werken	Crafts
Sachkunde, Sachunterricht	Science Lesson in Elementary School
Geschichte	History
Erdkunde	Geography
Politik	Politics
Biologie	Biology
Geografie	Geography
Religion	RE or Religion
Ethik	Ethics
Chemie	Chemistry
Physik	Physics
Informatik	Computer Science
Elektronische Datenverarbeitung	Computer Science

School Supplies and Ect.

der Radiergummi	Eraser/Rubber
der Bleistift	Pencil
der Stift, der Kugelschreiber	Pen
der Füller, der Füllfederhalter	Fountain pen
das Fach	Subject
die Klasse	Class
der Lehrer	Teacher (male)
die Lehrerin	Teacher (female)
die Schule	School
der Schüler	Pupil
der Student	Student (College/University)
die Stunde/Schulstunde	school hours
die Pause	Break
die Schultasche	Backpack

17 Review 1.02

Review Section I.B: Lessons I.4 to I.6

17.1 Vocabulary

```
I          ich
We         wir
You        du
           Sie (formal)
You All    ihr
           Sie (formal)
He         er
She        sie
It         es
They       sie

Have       habe (1st Person, Singular, ich)
           hast (2nd Person, Singular, informal, du)
           haben (1st & 3rd Person, Plural, wir, sie; 2nd Person, singular & plural,
formal, Sie)
           habt (2nd Person, Plural, informal, ihr)
Has        hat (3rd Person, singular, er, sie, es)
```

Am   bin (1st person, Singular)
Are   bist (2nd Person, Singular, informal)
       sind (1st & 3rd Person, Plural; 2nd Person, sing. & plur., formal)
       seid (2nd Person, Plural, informal)
Is   ist

Hello!   Hallo!
       Servus! (used in Bavaria and Austria)
       Moin! or Moin Moin! (used in northern Germany)
       Grüezi! (used in Switzerland)
Good morning! Guten Morgen! or Morgen!
Good day!   Guten Tag! or Tag!
Good evening! Guten Abend! or N'Abend!
       Grüß Gott! (used in southern Germany, Austria and South Tyrol)
Goodbye!   Auf Wiedersehen! or Wiedersehen
Bye!   Tschüss! or Tschau! *(Ciao from Italy)*
       Servus! (used in Bavaria, Austria)
Later!   Bis später! or Bis dann!
Good night!   Gute Nacht!

Good   Gut
Super!   Spitze!
Great!   Prima!
Very good!   Sehr gut!
Bad   Schlecht
Miserable   Miserabel

Who	Wer
What	Was
Where	Wo
When	Wann
Why	Warum
How	Wie

Boy	Der Junge
Girl	Das Mädchen
Man	Der Herr
Woman	Die Frau
Boys	Die Jungen
Girls	Die Mädchen
Men	Die Männer
Women	Die Frauen

Sport(s)	Sport
Interests	Hobbys
Soccer	Fußball
USA Football	Football
Volleyball	Volleyball
Basketball	Basketball
Tennis	Tennis
Baseball	Baseball
9-pin Bowling	Kegeln
Chess	Schach
Board Game	Das Brettspiel
Game	Das Spiel
Homework	Hausaufgaben
Television	Fernsehen
Movie	Der Film, Filme
And	und
But	aber
Or	oder

To Have	haben
To Be	sein
To Be Called	heißen
To Play	spielen
To Do/Make	machen
To Read	lesen
To Watch	schauen
To See	sehen
To Work	arbeiten
To Write	schreiben
To Swim	schwimmen

One	Eins
Two	Zwei
Three	Drei
Four	Vier
Five	Fünf
Six	Sechs
Seven	Sieben
Eight	Acht
Nine	Neun
Ten	Zehn
Eleven	Elf
Twelve	Zwölf
Thirteen	Dreizehn
Fourteen	Vierzehn
Fifteen	Fünfzehn
Sixteen	Sechzehn
Seventeen	Siebzehn
Eighteen	Achtzehn
Nineteen	Neunzehn

Twenty   Zwanzig
Thirty   Dreißig
Forty   Vierzig
Fifty   Fünfzig
Sixty   Sechzig
Seventy   Siebzig
Eighty   Achtzig
Ninety   Neunzig
Hundred   Hundert
Thousand   Tausend

Noon   Mittag
Midnight   Mitternacht
After   Nach
Till   Vor
Quarter   Viertel
Half Before   Halb
Quarter Before Dreiviertel (used in eastern Germany)

Day   Tag
Today   Heute
Tomorrow   Morgen
Yesterday   Gestern
Early Morning Morgen (use morgen früh for tomorrow morning)
Morning   Vormittag
Afternoon   Nachmittag
Evening   Abend
Night   Nacht

Monday   Montag
Tuesday   Dienstag
Wednesday   Mittwoch
Thursday   Donnerstag
Friday   Freitag
Saturday   Samstag or Sonnabend
Sunday   Sonntag
January   Januar
              Jänner (used in Austria)
February   Februar
March   März
April   April
May   Mai
June   Juni
              Juno (in spoken word only)
July   Juli
              Julei (in spoken word only)
August   August
September   September
October   Oktober
November   November
December   Dezember
Spring   Frühling
Summer   Sommer
Autumn   Herbst
Winter   Winter

Time   Die Zeit
Free Time   Die Freizeit
Always   immer
Often   oft
Sometimes   manchmal
Seldom   selten
Never   nie
Only   nur

Me   mich

Us   uns
You   dich
You (formal) Sie
You All   euch
Him   ihn
Her   sie
It   es
Them   sie

Appetizers   Vorspeisen
Salad   Der Salat
Bread   Das Brot
Breadstick   Die Scheibe Brot
Main Dishes Hauptgerichte
Sausage   Die Wurst
Sausages   Die Würste
Bratwurst   Die Bratwurst
Hot Dog   Das Hot Dog
Pizza   Die Pizza
Pizzas   Die Pizzen
Hamburger   Der Hamburger
Hamburgers Die Hamburger
With   mit (ignore article)
Without   ohne (ignore article)
Tomatoes   Die Tomaten
Lettuce   Der Salat
Cheese   Der Käse
Pickles   Die Gewürzgurken
Onions   Die Zwiebeln
Ketchup   Der Ketchup
Mustard   Der Senf
Chicken   Das Hähnchen
Chickens   Die Hähnchen
Seafood   Die Meeresfrüchte (plural)
Fish   Der Fisch
Sides   Die Beilage (singular), die Beilagen (plural)
Soup   Die Suppe
Soups   Die Suppen
Noodle Soup Die Nudelsuppe
French Fries Die Pommes frites (plural)
Fries   Die Fritten (Informal and plural)
Pasta   Die Pasta or Die Nudeln
Potato   Die Kartoffel
Potatoes   Die Kartoffeln
Corn   Der Mais
Bean   Die Bohne
Beans   Die Bohnen
Desserts   Nachspeisen
Gâteau   Die (Sahne-)Torte
Strudel   Der Strudel
Apple strudel Der Apfelstrudel
Cake   Der Kuchen
Piece of Cake Das Stück Kuchen
Pie   Die Pastete
Piece of Pie Das Stück Pastete
Apple Pie   Die Apfelpastete
Ice Cream   Das Eis
Pudding   Der Pudding
Cookie   Der Keks
Cookies   Die Kekse
Fruit   Das Obst
The Meal   Das Essen
Lunch   Das Mittagessen
Dinner   Das Abendessen
Hunger   Der Hunger
Thirst   Der Durst

```
To Eat        essen
To Drink      trinken
To Receive    bekommen
To Want       wollen
Would Like    möchten


Thank you                  Danke
Please & You're Welcome  Bitte
Thank you very much        Dankeschön
Thanks a lot               Danke sehr
No problem                 Kein Problem!

Chinese Food  chinesisches Essen
Japanese Food japanisches Essen
American Food amerikanisches Essen
Mexican Food  mexikanisches Essen
Arabic Food   arabisches Essen
Italian Food  italienisches Essen
Indian Food   indisches Essen
French Food   französiches Essen
Greek Food    griechisches Essen

Durch         Through
Für           For
Gegen         Against
Ohne          Without
Um            At, Around

Delicious     lecker
Tasty         schmackhaft
Juicy         saftig
Crunchy       knackig
Crispy        knusprig
Spicy         würzig
Stale         fade
              fad (used in Austria)
Salty         salzig
Sweet         süß
Bitter        bitter
Sour          sauer
Creamy        cremig
Hot           heiß
Burnt         angebrannt
Cold          kalt
Disgusting    schrecklich

To Pay        Zahlen
The Bill      Die Rechnung
Waiter        Der Ober
```

17.2 Wie heißt Du?

17.2.1 Hello and Goodbyes

Wir haben Begrüßungen und Verabschiedungen gelernt. Können Sie sich an diese erinnern?
Bericht![1]

---

1   Chapter 8.5 on page 28

17.2.2 Nominative Case

Wir haben auch den Nominativ gelernt. Können Sie sich an ihn erinnern?
Bericht![2]

17.2.3 Names

Wir haben das Verb heißen gelernt. Erinnern Sie sich?
Bericht![3]

17.2.4 Verbs

Wir haben zwei andere Verben konjugiert. Können Sie sich daran erinnern?
Bericht![4]

17.2.5 Articles

Wir haben die Artikel beim Nominativ gelernt. Können Sie sich an sie erinnern?
Bericht![5]

17.3 Freizeit

17.3.1 Regulars Verbs

Wir haben die regelmäßigen Verbende gelernt. Können Sie sich an sie erinnern?
Bericht![6]

17.3.2 Likes & Dislikes

Wir haben gelernt unser Gefallen auszudrücken. Können Sie sich daran erinnern?
Bericht![7]

---

2   Chapter 8.5 on page 28
3   Chapter 8.5 on page 28
4   Chapter 8.5 on page 28
5   Chapter 8.5 on page 28
6   Chapter 10 on page 43
7   Chapter 9.4 on page 39

17.3.3 Numbers

Wir haben die Zahlen gelernt. Können Sie sich an sie erinnern?

Bericht![8]

17.3.4 Time

Wir haben schon Zeit-Wörter gelernt. Können Sie sich an diese erinnern?

Bericht![9]

17.4 Essen

17.4.1 Accusative Case

Wir hatten schon den Akkusativ-Fall gelernt. Können Sie sich an ihn erinnern?

Bericht![10]

17.4.2 Modal Verbs

Wir haben die Modalverben gelernt. Können Sie sich an sie erinnern?

Bericht![11]

17.4.3 Kein-Words

Wir haben die „Kein"-Wörter gelernt. Können Sie sich daran erinnern?

Bericht![12]

17.4.4 This, Everyone, and Which

Wir haben „dieser", „jeder" und „welcher" gelernt.. Können Sie sich erinnern?

Bericht![13]

---

18 Section 1.03 ~ Vienna, Austria

19 Lesson 1.07 - Das Fest

Lesson I.10: Das Fest

This lesson deals with the Christmas time in the German language countries, where you learn some traditions and vocabularies about Christmas. You'll also learn about "there is" and "there are" in German and about the dative case.

19.1 Dialogue

Read and listen to the following dialogue between mother and daughter: Roswitha and Anja. Both of them want to decorate for Christmas.

Roswitha	Heute ist der erste Advent. Lass uns zusammen schmücken!
Anja	Au ja, Mama. Ich hole die Dekoration heraus.
Roswitha	Den Adventskranz stellen wir wie jedes Jahr auf den Wohnzimmertisch und die Weihnachtspyramide kommt auf das Regal.
Anja	Wo soll ich den Räuchermann hinstellen?
Roswitha	Stelle ihn bitte mal auf den Fenstersims hin, Mäuschen.
Anja	Wird gemacht!

advent	der Advent
decorate	schmücken, dekorieren
decoration	die Dekoration, die Deko *coll.*, der Schmuck
advent wreath	der Adventskranz
coffee table	der Wohnzimmertisch
Christmas pyramid	die Weihnachtspyramide
shelf	das Regal
sill	der Fenstersims, die Fensterbank
Little mouse	das Mäuschen

- In Austria *Adventkranz*

19.2 Es gibt

German	English

Es gibt	Zimt	**There is**	cinnamon
Es gibt	ein Rentier	**There is**	a reindeer
Es gibt	Nussknacker	**There are**	nutcrackers
Es gibt	ein paar Ausstecher	**There are**	some cookie cutter

- The English words *there is* and *there are* are both in German *es gibt*. When you ask someone, if there's a snowman, you say **Gibt es hier einen Schneemann?**. Many German native speaker put the words **gibt** and **es** into **gibt's**.

19.3 Weihnachten in Deutschland

In Germany the advent season begins on Sunday four weeks before Christmas. It's the day where many families decorate their houses or flats, begin to bake some biscuits and start to sing some Christmas carols. One typical decoration is the advent wreath, which has four candles - one candle is lit in the first week, two candles in the second week, etc. - and normally stands on the dining table or on the coffee table. Another tradition, especially for children, is the advent calendar that you hang on the wall. They've often got 24 doors and you're only allowed to open one a day. Other typical Christmas decorations are a crib, a Räuchermann - a wooden figure that blows flavour of incense cones - in Northern Germany a Moosmann, Christmas pyramids and Schwibbogen and nutcrackers and poinsettias and much more. Most Christmas markets start in the first week of Advent. There you can buy some little Christmas presents, decorations, ride some carnival rides, and often drink some hot spiced wine - the children drink punch for children, listen to carolers and enjoy a warm, snowy atmosphere. On the 6th of December, German children celebrate St. Nicholas Day. The children put a boot in front of the door and wait until St. Nicholas brings little presents that are often sweets, walnuts, apples, tangerines and oranges. Bad children get birching by Knecht Ruprecht (which is now forbidden in Germany). Pupils do a secret Santa with other pupils on the last school days before the Christmas holidays, which are often two or three weeks long. St. Nicholas looks similar to Santa Claus who brings big presents on the evening of the 24th of December; in Southern Germany Christkind brings the presents. Most families decorate their Christmas trees on this day with Christmas baubles and tinsel and candles and so forth. After the Christmas dinner, the whole family sits next to the Christmas tree and exchanges gifts.

Merry Christmas!	Frohe Weihnachten!
	Fröhliche Weihnachten! (used by Santa)
advent season	die Adventszeit
advent calendar	der Adventskalender
bag	der Sack
boot	der Stiefel
caroller	der Sternsinger
Christmas bauble	die Christbaumkugel
Christmas bonus	Weihnachtsgeld
Christmas carol	das Weihnachtslied
Christmas card	die Weihnachtskarte

Christmas cracker	Knallbonbon
Christmas Day Speech	die Weihnachtsansprache
Christmas Eve	der Heiligabend
Christmas market	der Weihnachtsmarkt
Christmas ornament	Christbaumschmuck, Weihnachtsbaumschmuck
Christmas present	das Weihnachtsgeschenk
Christmas spirit	die Weihnachtsstimmung
Christmas time	die Weihnachtszeit
Christmas tree	der Weihnachtsbaum, der Christbaum
crib	die Krippe
dining table	der Esstisch
do a secret Santa	wichteln
flavour	der Duft
gift giving	die Bescherung
gnome	der Wichtel
holly	die Stechpalme
Jack Frost	Väterchen Frost
list of wishes	der Wunschzettel
mistletoe	der Mistelzweig
North Pole	der Nordpol
nutcracker	der Nussknacker
poinsettia	der Weihnachtsstern
Santa's Little Helper	Knecht Ruprecht
sleigh	der Schlitten
St. Nicholas	St. Nikolaus
the three Magi	die heiligen drei Könige
tinsel	das Lametta
tradition	der Brauch

- Do you have the Christmas spirit yet? - Bist du schon in Weihnachtsstimmung?
- Do you decorate your house this year? - Schmückst du dieses Jahr dein Haus?
- On St. Nicholas Day gets Julian a little present. - An Nikolaustag bekommt Julian ein kleines Geschenk.
- The Queen takes every year a Christmas Day Speech. - Die Queen hält jedes Jahr eine Weihnachtsansprache.
- The whole room is sweet with cinnamon. - Der ganze Raum duftet nach Zimt.

19.4 Dativsätze

- The *Dativ*, also called *3. Fall* or *Wemfall* is in the German language the third object.
- **Die Kokosmakronen gehören der Anja.** - You ask: **Wem gehören die Kokosmakronen?** - the answer is: **Der Anja (gehören die Kokosmakronen).**
- **Lisa schenkt (dem) Björn ein Spekulatius** - You ask: **Wem schenkt Lisa ein Spekulatius?** - the answer is: **Dem Björn (schenkt Lisa ein Spekulatius).**

19.5 Weihnachtsessen

```
das Plätzchen, der Keks        cookie
die Ausstecher                 cookie cutter
das Nudelholz                  rolling pin
die Vanillekipferl             vanilla cornets
der Lebkuchen                  gingerbread
das Lebkuchenhaus              gingerbread house
die Kokosmakrone               coconut macaroon
die Spitzbuben                 jammy dodgers, linzer eye a biscuit with currant jam and
icing powdered sugar
die Pfeffernuss                spice nut
der Christstollen              stollen
die Marzipankartoffel          marzipan potato
die Weihnachtsgans             Christmas goose
der Weihnachtskarpfen          Christmas carp
der Truthahn                   turkey
Würstchen und Kartoffelsalat   sausages and potato salad
das Spekulatius                almond biscuit
der Baumkuchen                 pyramid cake
der Mürbeteig                  shortcrust
der Springerle                 springerle
das Bethmännchen               bethmännchen typical Frankfurt marzipan biscuits
der Zimtstern                  star-shaped cinnamon biscuit
das Früchtebrot                fruitcake
der Bratapfel                  roast apple
der Dominostein                domino a candy that you can eat in advent time
die Zuckerstange               candy cane
der Glühwein                   hot spiced wine
der Kinderpunsch               punch for children
das Kenkentjüch                kenkentjüch cookies from northern Germany
die gebrannte Mandeln          roasted almonds
das Weihnachtsessen            Christmas dinner
das Hirschhornsalz             salt of harts horn
der Zimt                       cinnamon
der Puderzucker                icing powdered sugar
das Aroma                      flavour
```

- In the southern part of Germany they have other words for *Plätzchen*.

So in Swabian they call it *Plätzle* or *Brötle* and in Bavaria *Platzerl*. In Switzerland they call it *Guetsli*.

- Other names for *Nudelholz* are *Teigrolle*, *Wellholz*, *Wälgerholz* and *Rollholz* rare.

In Austria and Bavaria they call it *Nudelwalker* and in Switzerland *Wallholz*.

20 Lesson 1.08 - Privileg und Verantwortung

Lesson I.11: Privileg und Verantwortung

20.1 Jobs and Tasks

20.1.1 Vocabulary

Careers

```
Work                    Arbeit
Doctor                  Arzt
Buniness Man            Geschäftsmann
Buniness Woman          Geschäftsfrau
Teacher                 Lehrer
Police Officer          Polizeibeamte
Fireman                 Feuerwehrmann
Actor                          Schauspieler
Artist                  Künstler
Author                  Schriftsteller
Bank Clerk                  Bankangestellter
Car Mechanic                Automechaniker
Chemist                  Chemiker
Civil Servant                Beamter
Computer Programmer       Programmierer
Engineer                 Ingenieur
Farmer                  Landwirt
Hairdresser                 Friseur
Journalist               Journalist
Lawyer                  Rechtsanwalt
Lecturer                 Dozent
Nurse                        Krankenpfleger
Pensioner                 Rentner
Photographer                Fotograf
Politician                Politiker
Postman                 Briefträger
Professor                Professor
Salesperson                Verkäufer
Secretary                Sekretär
Student                 Student
Taxi Driver                 Taxifahrer
Waiter                  Kellner
```

Tasks

```
    Cleaning             Reinigung
    Cooking              Kochen
    Homework             Hausaufgaben
    Laundry              Wäscherei
    Tasks                Aufgaben
```

20.2 Plans

20.2.1 Common Phases

Ich habe Pläne...

I have plans...

Ich habe Pläne mit...

I have plans with...

20.3 Places To Go

20.3.1 Vocabulary

Germany Deutschland

Hamburg	Hamburg
Berlin	Berlin
Frankfurt	Frankfurt
Cologne	Köln
Munich	München

20.3.2 Common Phases

Ich muss nach ... gehen.

I have to go to...

21 Lesson 1.09 - Wetter

Lesson I.12: Wetter

21.1 Dialoge

Lukas calls his friend Nadja after he sees the weather forecast.

Lukas	Was für ein Dreckswetter die heute mal wieder in der Wettervorhersage angekündigt haben!
Nadja	Was für ein Wetter soll es denn geben?
Lukas	Es soll heute regnen.
Nadja	Hattest du was vor?
Lukas	Ja, ich wollte in die Stadt gehen, um einen Mantel zu kaufen.
Nadja	Es kommt noch schlimmer!
Lukas	Wieso?
Nadja	Es wird nämlich zuerst regnen und dann bekommen wir Schneefall.
Lukas	Boah nee! Die Straßen werden dann vereist sein.
Nadja	Na ja, ich muss jetzt zur Schule. Tschau Lukas!
Lukas	Tschau!

21.2 Weather

21.2.1 Vocabulary

informal for: bad weather	das Sauwetter (lit. *sow weather*)
	das Dreckswetter (lit. *dirty weather*)
	das Scheißwetter (lit. *shit weather*)
weather forecast	die Wettervorhersage*
sun	die Sonne*
sunny with some clouds	heiter (*you'll hear it in the weather forecast*)
rainbow	der Regenbogen
starlit	sternenklar
fog	der Nebel*
frost	der Frost*
wind	der Wind*
storm	der Sturm*

thunderstorm	das Gewitter*
	das Unwetter
thunder	der Donner*
lightning	der Blitz*
cloud	die Wolke*
overcast	bedeckt*
precipitation	der Niederschlag
rain	der Regen*
rain shower	der Regenschauer*
rainy	regnerisch*
(to) rain cats and dogs	in Strömen regnen
	schütten
drizzle	der Niesel*
snow	der Schnee*
snow falling	der Schneefall*
snowy	verschneit*
sleet	der Schneeregen*
low snow falling	der Schniesel (*in some regions of Germany*)
hail	der Hagel*
graupel	der Graupel*
black ice	das Glatteis*

You will need to know each expression with an asterisk (*) after it. The others, of course, would be useful to know for the weather forecast or when someone talks with you about weather. But you aren't forced to know Schniesel. Because many people doesn't know this word.

21.2.2 Common Phrases

Wie ist (denn) das Wetter in Berlin?

What's the weather like in Berlin?

In Berlin scheint die Sonne.

The sun shines in Berlin.

Wie wird das Wetter?

How's the weather?

Können Sie mir sagen wie das Wetter heute wird?

Can you tell me how today's weather is going to be?

Wird es regnen, oder bleibt es schön?

Is it going to rain, or would it still be nice?

Es wird heute schlechtes Wetter erwartet. Nimm bitte deinen Regenschirm mit!

Bad weather is today expected. Please take your umbrella with you!

Wie viel Grad zeigt das Thermometer an?

How much degrees says the thermometer?

Das Thermometer zeigt 15 Grad (Celcius) an.

The thermometer says 15 degrees (Celsius).

Das Thermometer zeigt minus 15 Grad (Celcius)* an.

The thermometer says minus 15 degrees (Celsius).

- You can also say *Das Thermometer zeigt 15 Grad minus an.*

21.3 Transportation

21.3.1 Vocabulary

```
das Auto              car
der Bus               bus
das Fahrrad           bike
das Motorrad          motor-cycle
das Mofa              moped
der Lastwagen         truck
die Straße            road
die Landstraße        highway
die Autobahn          motorway
der Stadtbus          city bus
der Linienbus         urban bus
der Reisebus          coach
die Bushaltestelle    bus stop
der Zug               train
die Stadtbahn         city railway
die Straßenbahn       tramway
der Bahnhof           trainstation
das Flugzeug          airplane
der Helikopter        helicopter
der Flughafen         airport
das Boot              boat
das Schiff            ship
die Fähre             ferry
der Hafen             harbor
```

22 Review 1.03

Review Section I.C: Lessons I.7 to I.9

22.1 Vocabulary

```
Babywear                Die Babyartikel (plural)
Children's Wear      Die Kinderbekleidung
Clearance Sale          Der Räumungsverkauf
Closed                  Geschlossen
Clothing             Die Kleidung
Computer Section     Der Computershop
Cosmetics             Die Kosmetik
Customer             Der Kunde
Customer Service     Der Kundendienst
Electrical Appliance     Das Elektrogerät
Escalator             Die Rolltreppe
Fashion              Die Mode
Furniture             Das Möbel (no plural)
Gift                    Der Geschenkartikel
Good Value (Adj.)       Preiswert
Groceries             Die Lebensmittel (plural)
Jewellery             Damenschuhe (plural)
Leather Goods           Die Lederwaren (plural)
Open                    Geöffnet
Opening Hours           Die Öffnungszeiten (plural)
Present              Das Geschenk
Reduced              Reduziert
Sales Receipt           Der Kassenbon
Souvenir             Das Andenken
Special Offer           Das Sonderangebot
Sports Goods            Sportartikel (plural)
Stationery            Schreibwaren (plural)
Summer Sale            Der Sommerschlussverkauf (abbr. SSV)
Video Store           Die Videothek
Winter Sale           Der Winterschlussverkauf (abbr. WSV)

Department Store       Warenhaus
Retail Store           Einzelhandelsgeschäft
The Mall               Einkaufszentrum
Boutique               Boutique
Store                  Geschäft
Manager                Manager
Employee               Angestellter
Sales Clerk            Verkäufer
Cashier                Kassierer
Dressing Room          Umkleidekabine
Men's Section          Männerabteilung
Women's Section        Frauenabteilung
First Floor            Erstes Stockwerk
Menswear               Männerkleidung
Second Floor           Zweiter Stock
```

```
Womenswear              Frauenkleidung
Third Floor             Dritte Stock
Kids Section            Kinderabteilung
Fourth Floor            Vierter Stock
Electronics             Elektronik
Kitchenware             Küchenbedarf
Fifth Floor             Fünfter Stock
Lighting                Beleuchtung
Bedding                 Bettwäsche
Toys                    Spielwaren
Six Floor               Sechster Stock
Food                    Lebensmittel

Electronics             Elektronik
Television              Fernsehen
Digital Camera          Digitalkamera
Telephone               Telefon
Cell phone              Mobiltelefon, Handy
Computer                Computer, Rechner
Speakers                Lautsprecher
DVDs                    DVDs
CDs                     CDs
DVD Player              DVD-Player
CD Player               CD-Player
Bedding                 Bettwäsche
Blankets                Decken
Pillow                  Kopfkissen
Pillow Case             Kopfkissenbezug
Sheets                  Blätter
Bed Skirt               Bett-Rock

Price                   Preis
Note                    Der Schein
Coin                    Die Münze
1 Euro Coin             Das Eurostück
2 Euro Coin             Das Zweieurostück
5 Euro Note             Der Fünfeuroschein
10 Euro Note            Der Zehneuroschein
100 Euro Note           Der Hunderteuroschein
1 Cent Coin             Das Centstück
2 Cent Coin             Das Zweicentstück
5 Cent Coin             Das Fünfcentstück
10 Cent Coin            Das Zehncentstück
20 Cent Coin            Das Zwanzigcentstück
50 Cent Coin            Das Fünfzigcentstück

Skirt                   Der Rock
Pullover                Der Pullover
Scarf                   Das Tuch
Coat                    Der Mantel
Shirt                   Das Hemd
Sweater                 Der Pullover
Necktie                 Der Schlips
Jacket                  Die Jacke
Pants                   Die Hose
Hat                     Der Hut
Shoe                    Der Schuh
Sock                    Die Socke
Glove                   Der Handschuh
Blouse                  Die Bluse

Size                    Die Größe
Color                   Die Farbe
Cotton                  Die Baumwolle
Leather                 Das Leder
Rayon                   Die Kuntseide
```

Small	Klein
Medium	Mittel
Large	Groß
Extra-Large	Extragroß
Cheap	Billig
Expensive	Teuer
Pretty	Schön
Ugly	Hässlich
Soft	Weich
New	Neu
Broad	Breit
Wide	Weit
Tight	Eng
Comfortable	Bequem
Red	Rot
Blue	Blau
Green	Grün
Orange	Orange
Violet	Veilchen
Yellow	Gelb
Brown	Braun
Indigo	Indigo
Gray	Grau
Black	Schwarz
White	Weiß
To Look	Aussehen
To Try On	Anprobieren
To Put On	Anziehen
To Take	Nehmen
To Buy	Kaufen
To Have On/Wear	Anhaben
	Tragen
Sohn	Son
Tochter	Daughter
Vater	Father
Mutter	Mother
Großvater	Grandfather
Großmutter	Grandmother
Opa	Grandpa
Oma	Grandma
Schwester	Sister
Bruder	Brother
Geschwister	Brothers & Sisters
Enkel	Grandson
Enkelin	Granddaughter
Frau	Wife
Mann	Husband
Schwiegervater	Father-in-Law
Schwiegertochter	Daughter-in-Law
Schwager	Brother-in-Law
Schwägerin	Sister-in-Law
Schwiegermutter	Mother-in-Law
Schwiegersohn	Son-in-Law
Onkel	Uncle
Tante	Aunt
Geschenk	Present
Nimmt	To Take Away
Lesen	To Read
Schreiben	To Write
Studieren	To Study
Lernen	To Study

```
Zeichnen                    To Paint

Deutsch                     German
Englisch                    English
Russisch                    Russian
Französisch                 French
Latein                      Latin
Mathematik                  Mathematics
Sport                       PE or Gym
Kunst or Zeichnen           Arts
Musik                       Music
Geschichte                  History
Biologie                    Biology
Geografie                   Geography
Religion                    RE or Religion
Chemie                      Chemistry
Physik                      Physics
Informatik                  Computer Science

der Radiergummi             Eraser/Rubber
der Bleistift               Pencil
der Kuli/Kugelschreiber     Pen
das Fach                    Subject
die Klasse                  Class
der Lehrer                  Teacher (male)
die Lehrerin                Teacher (female)
die Schule                  School
der Schüler                 Student (High/Secondary School and Lower)
der Student                 Student (College/University)
die Stunde/Schulstunde      Lesson
die Pause                   Break
die Schultasche             Backpack
```

23 Section 1.04 ˜ Berne, Switzerland

24 Lesson 1.10 - Zu Hause Essen

1. REDIRECT German/Level I/Zu Hause essen[1]

---

1   Chapter 24 on page 137

25 Lesson 1.11 - Filme

Lesson I.14: Filme

26 Lesson 1.12 - Das Haus

Lesson I.15: Das Haus

26.1 The Home

26.1.1 Rooms in the Home

Room	das Zimmer
Living Room	das Wohnzimmer
Dining Room	das Esszimmer
Kitchen	die Küche
Bedroom	das Schlafzimmer
Bathroom	das Badezimmer
Hall	der Flur

26.1.2 Features in the Home

Floor	der Boden
Ceiling	die Decke
Door	die Tür
Front door	die Haustür
Window	das Fenster
Wall	die Wand
Roof	das Dach
Stairs	die Treppe
Central heating	die Zentralheizung

26.1.3 Furniture and fittings

Carpet	der Teppich
Table	der Tisch
Chair	der Stuhl
Armchair	der Sessel
Sofa	das Sofa
Cupboard	der Schrank
Bed	das Bett

Radiator	der Heizkörper
Cooker	der Herd
Refrigerator	der Kühlschrank
Washing machine	die Waschmaschine
Bath	die Badewanne
Television set	der Fernsehapparat

27 Review 1.04

Review Section I.D: Lessons I.10 - I.12

27.1 Vocabulary

```
das Spiel                     Game
das Videospiel                Video Game
der Spaß                      Fun
die Feier                     Party*
die Party                     Party
die Musik                     Music
die Torte                     Cake
das Fass                      Keg
das Bier                      Beer
der Schnaps                   Hard Liquor
der Wein                      Wine
der Weißwein                  White Wine
der Rotwein                   Red Wine


Feiern                        To Party
Trinken                       Drinking
Saufen                        To Get Drunk
Erbrechen / sich Übergeben    To Throw Up
Kotzen                        To Puke (slang)
```
Tanzen   To Dance
der Geburtstag   Birthday
Weihnachten   Christmas
Ostern   Easter
das Jubiläum   Anniversary
das Wasser   Water

Work   Arbeit
Doctor   der Arzt
Buniness Man   der Geschäftsmann
Buniness Woman   die Geschäftsfrau
Teacher   der Lehrer
Police Officer   der Polizeibeamte
Fireman   der Feuerwehrmann
Actor   der Schauspieler
Artist   der Künstler
Author   der Schriftsteller
Bank Clerk   Bankangestellter
Car Mechanic   der Automechaniker
Chemist   der Chemiker
Civil Servant   Beamter
Engineer   der Ingenieur
Farmer   der Landwirt
Hairdresser   der Friseur
Journalist   der Journalist
Lawyer   der Rechtsanwalt
Lecturer   der Dozent

Nurse	der Krankenpfleger
Pensioner	der Rentner
Photographer	der Fotograf
Politician	der Politiker
Postman	der Briefträger
Professor	der Professor
Salesperson	der Verkäufer
Secretary	der Sekretär
Student	der Student
Taxi Driver	der Taxifahrer
Waiter	der Kellner
Germany	Deutschland
Humburg	Hamburg
Berlin	Berlin
Frankfurt	Frankfurt
Colonge	Köln
Munich	München
Weather	das Wetter
Rain	der Regen
Snow	der Schnee
Snow Showers	Schneesch
Showers	Schauer
Thunder	Donner
Storm	der Sturm
Thunderstorm	das Gewitter
Cloudy	Bewölkt
Overcast	Bedeckt
Hail	der Hagel
Drizzle	Nieseln
Thaw	Tauen
Frost	der Frost
Car	das Auto
Train	der Zug
Trainstation	der Bahnhof
Airplane	das Flugzeug
Boat	das Boot
Highway	die Landstraße
Road	die Straße

28 LEVEL TWO LESSONS

29 Contents

---

30 Section 2.01 ˜ Salzburg, Austria

31 Lesson 2.01 - Einfache Gespräche unter Freunden

32 Lesson 2.02 - Fremde und Freunde

33 Lesson 2.03 - Die Zahlen

34 Lesson 2.04 - Eine Geschichte über Zürich

35 Review 2.01

36 Section 2.02 ˜ Zürich, Switzerland

37 Lesson 2.05 - Die Wohnung

38 Lesson 2.06 - Mathematik

39 Lesson 2.07 - Mein, Dein, und Sein

40 Lesson 2.08 - Einkaufen gehen

41 Review 2.02

42 Section 2.03 ˜ Hannover, Germany

43 Lesson 2.09 - Verbtempus und Wortstellung

44 Lesson 2.10 - Undeveloped

45 Lesson 2.11 - Undeveloped

46 Lesson 2.12 - Undeveloped

47 Review 2.03

48 LEVEL THREE LESSONS

49 Contents

---

1   Chapter 27.1 on page 143
2   Chapter 51 on page 191
3   Chapter 52 on page 193
4   Chapter 53 on page 195
5   Chapter 27.1 on page 143
6   Chapter 55 on page 199
7   Chapter 27.1 on page 143
8   Chapter 27.1 on page 143
9   Chapter 27.1 on page 143
10 Chapter 27.1 on page 143
11 Chapter 27.1 on page 143
12 Chapter 27.1 on page 143

50 Section 3.01 ˜ Bonn, Germany

51 Lesson 3.01 - Markus

52 Lesson 3.02 - Gespräche unter Geschäftsmännern

53 Lesson 3.03 - Mach dir keine Sorgen!

54 Section 3.02 ~ Innsbruck, Austria

55 Lesson 3.04 - Die Geschäftsleute

<center>Lektion Vier für Fortgeschrittene</center>

55.1 Gespräch 4-2 ˜ Die Geschäftsleute

Herr Schmidt und Herr Standish, als sie sich am Hauptsitz endlich begegnen. Frau Baumann ist auch da.

- *Herr Schmidt*: Guten Morgen, Herr Standish! Darf ich mich vorstellen: mein Name ist Schmidt, Johann Schmidt.
- *Herr Standish*: Es freut mich sehr, Sie kennen zu lernen. Ich heiße Miles Standish.
- *Herr Schmidt*: Ich glaube, dass Sie Frau Baumann schon kennen.
- *Herr Standish*: Ja, gewiss. Wie geht es Ihnen, Frau Baumann?
- *Frau Baumann*: Danke, es geht mir gut.
- *Herr Schmidt*: Verstehe ich es richtig, dass Sie gestern ankamen und morgen ins Wiener Büro reisen müssen?
- *Herr Standish*: Ja, am Montag fuhr ich mit dem Schnellzug durch den Ärmelkanaltunnel. Wenn ich meine Arbeit abgeschlossen habe, werde ich am Donnerstag nach Zürich und Wien reisen.
- *Herr Schmidt*: Sehr gut. Bitte sprechen Sie vor Ende der Woche noch mit Frau Kaufmann.
- *Frau Baumann*: Sie arbeitet in der Geschäftsbibliothek.
- *Herr Schmidt*: Das ist richtig. Die Bibliothek.
- *Herr Standish*: Ich werde es sofort tun.
- *Herr Schmidt*: Alles klar.
- *Frau Baumann*: Später werden wir eine Versammlung in der Buchhaltung abhalten.
- *Herr Standish*: Sehr gut. Auf Wiedersehen Frau Baumann. Auf Wiedersehen Herr Schmidt.
- *Herr Schmidt*: Auf Wiedersehen.

55.2 Vokabeln 4-3

```
der Ärmelkanaltunnel    Chunnel (England-France channel tunnel)
die Arbeit              work
die Bibliothek          library
die Buchhaltung         accounting office
das Büro                office
der Donnerstag          Thursday
```

```
die Geschäftsbibliothek company (business) library
der Montag              Monday
der Name                name
der Schnellzug          express train
das Sehen               vision
die Versammlung         meeting
das Wien                Vienna (Austria)
das Wiedersehen         reunion
die Woche               week
das Zürich              Zurich
```

```
alles klar              all right, everything clear
am Montag               on Monday
dann wenn               at such time when
Darf ich... ?           May I... ?
Es freut mich sehr      It gives me pleasure
Guten Morgen!           Good morning!              (greeting)
```
Ja, gewiss   certainly, of course
vor Ende der Woche   before the end of the week
Wiener Büro   Vienna branch office

```
abhalten                hold
abschließen             complete
ankommen (kam an,
    angekommen)         arrive
fahren                  ride
geben                   give
kennen lernen           meet, make acquaintance
müssen                  must                       (aux.)
```
reisen   travel
sehen   see, look
tun   do, accomplish
sich vorstellen   introduce
werden   will
würde   would

```
bitte                   please
da                      there
durch                   through, by means of
endlich                 finally
gestern                 yesterday
nach                    to, towards
natürlich               of course
mich                    myself (reflexive)
```
mit   with
schnell   fast, quick, rapid
sofort   directly, forthwith
wieder   again, once again

- Pronunciation Guide[1] >>

55.3 Grammatik 4-4 ˜ Personal Pronouns: Accusative Case

Here are the personal pronouns in the **accusative** case:

---

1   Chapter 84 on page 325

	Singular		Plural	
1st person	**mich**	me	**uns**	us
2nd person	**dich** (**Sie***)	you	**euch** (**Sie***)	you
3rd person	**ihn, sie, es**	him, her, it	**sie** (all genders)	them

***Polite** form.

The accusative case is that of the object of a verb. Only transitive verbs take direct objects. The pronoun (and noun in two cases) **object** in each of these sentences is <u>underlined</u> in the German and the English:

Können Sie <u>mich</u> verstehen?	Can you understand <u>me</u>?
Ich kann <u>Sie</u> verstehen.	I can understand <u>you</u>.
Ich kann <u>sie</u> verstehen	I can understand (<u>her</u> or <u>them</u>).
Ich kann <u>ihn</u> dir zurück kicken!	I can kick <u>it</u> back to you!

Note the order of the pronouns in this last sentence. If the direct object (here: *ihn*) is a personal pronoun, it precedes the dative (*dir*); if it were a noun, the dative would precede it, as in these sentences:

Hier, ich kicke dir <u>den Ball</u> zu.	Here, I kick <u>the ball</u> to you.
Darf ich Ihnen <u>meine Freundin</u> vorstellen?	May I introduce <u>my friend</u> to you?

Other uses of the accusative case in German will be explored in future lessons. Tables of the personal pronouns in all cases are summarized in Pronoun Tables[2].

55.4 Grammatik 4-5 ˜ Personal Pronouns in the Dative Case

Here are the personal pronouns in the **dative** case:

	Singular		Plural	
1st person	**mir**	me	**uns**	us
2nd person	**dir** (**Ihnen***)	you	**euch** (**Ihnen***)	you
3rd person	**ihm, ihr, ihm**	him, her, it	**ihnen** (all genders)	them

***Polite** form.

---

2   http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/German%2FAppendix%203

The dative case is that of the indirect object of a verb. The pronoun **indirect object** of these sentences is <u>underlined</u> in the German and the English:

Es geht mir gut	It goes (for) <u>me</u> well
Wie geht es dir?	How goes it (for or with) <u>you</u>
Und können Sie mir sagen...?	And can you tell <u>me</u>...?
Karl gibt ihm den Ball	Karl gave <u>him</u> the ball.
Wie geht es Ihnen?	How goes it (with) <u>you</u>? (How are you?)

This last sentence is an example from Gespräch 1-2 using the polite form of 'you'. Whether singular or plural must be established by context. This next sentence translates with *ihnen* as 'them':

Wie geht es ihnen?	How goes it with <u>them</u>? (How are they?)

The meaning of *ihnen* (or *Ihnen*) would have to come from context in a conversation.

Another use of the dative case in German is after these prepositions: **aus, bei, mit, nach, seit, von, zu**. You will be introduced to the meanings of these prepositions over many future lessons rather than all at once, because some have many meanings in English. Indeed, because each language associates specific prepositions with many common sayings (and these often do not correspond in German and English), these "little" words can be troublesome for students. Nonetheless, you should memorize now the list of prepositions above to always remember their association with the dative case. Tables of the pronouns in all cases are summarized in Appendix 2[3].

Word order in a German sentence with an indirect object depends upon whether that direct object is a pronoun or a noun. If the <u>direct object is a noun, the dative precedes the accusative</u>; if the <u>direct object is a personal pronoun, the accusative precedes the dative</u>:

Ich gebe dem Jungen den Ball.	I give the boy the ball.
Ich gebe ihm den Ball.	I give him the ball.
Ich gebe ihn ihm.	I give it to him.
Ich gebe ihn dem Jungen.	I give it to the boy.

English sentence structure is similar.

---

3   Chapter 85 on page 327

56 Lesson 3.05 - Der Engländer in Österreich

Lektion Fünf

Figure 8 Rathaus von St. Pölten

Rathaus von St. Pölten

56.1 Gespräch 5-2 ˜ Der Engländer in Österreich

Figure 9 Flag of the Republic of Austria

Republik Österreich Wenn er auf den Kontinent fährt, wandert Herr Standish gern. Heute früh fährt er in die Stadt St. Pölten in Niederösterreich. Er spricht mit einer fremden Frau:

- *Herr Standish*: Entschuldigen Sie bitte. Wo ist hier ein Hotel?
- *Die Frau*: Gleich dort drüben. Das ist das Hotel "Zur Post".
- *Herr Standish*: Gibt es ein Restaurant darin?
- *Die Frau*: Ja gewiss! Ein Restaurant mit einfacher Küche, besonders zum Abendessen. Aber ich könnte Ihnen ein anderes Restaurant empfehlen. Es heißt 'Alt-Wien', und es gibt dort das beste Frühstück. Das Restaurant ist links neben dem Hotel, um die Ecke.
- *Herr Standish*: Danke sehr. Und können Sie mir sagen, wo das Rathaus von St. Pölten ist?
- *Die Frau*: Wie bitte?
- *Herr Standish*: Wie komme ich zum Rathaus?
- *Die Frau*: Rechts um die Ecke und dann immer geradeaus – ungefähr ein Kilometer.
- *Herr Standish*: Danke sehr.
- *Die Frau*: Bitte sehr. Wiedersehen.
- *Herr Standish*: Auf Wiedersehen.

56.2 Vokabeln 5A

```
das Abendessen          supper (evening meal)
[das] Österreich        Austria
die Ecke                corner
das Frühstück           breakfast
das Hotel               hotel
der Kilometer           kilometer
die Küche               cooking, cuisine
der Kontinent           continent (Europe)
[das] Niederösterreich  (federal state of) Lower Austria
das Rathaus             city hall
das Restaurant          restaurant
die Stadt               city
```

```
Bitte sehr          You're welcome
Entschuldigen Sie   Pardon me, excuse me
```

```
Es gibt dort...         There is there...
Gibt es...?             Is there..?
Guten Tag               good day (parting)
immer geradeaus         straight on ahead
können Sie              could you (polite form)
Wie bitte?              Pardon me? (polite "come again?")
```

```
empfehlen               recommend
fahren                  travel
kommen                  come, go, get
wandern                 wander
sagen                   say, tell
sprechen                speak
```

anderer, andere, anderes   other
besonders   especially
bitte   please
das   that
dann   then
darin   therein
ein   a (indefinite article)
eins   one (cardinal number)
fremd   unknown
gern   gladly
gleich   just, right (correct), right here, same
heute früh   this morning
hier   here (in this place)
ich   I (personal pronoun)
links   left (direction)
neben   next to
rechts   right (direction)
ungefähr   approximately
von   of (*Rathaus von St. Pölten* = St. Polten City Hall)
wie   how (interrogative)
wo   where (interrogative)
zu   to (*zum* = contraction of *zu dem*)

56.3 Andere Wörter 4A

```
der Bahnhof             train station
der Flughafen           airport
die Polizeiwache        police station
die Post                post office
```

```
genau                   exact(ly)
heute                   today
```

56.4 Lesestück 5-1 ˜ Eine Geschichte über St. Pölten

Figure 10

Karte: St. Pölten in Österreich

Niederösterreich ist sowohl flächenmäßig als auch nach Einwohnern das größte der neun österreichischen Bundesländer. Sankt Pölten ist die Landeshauptstadt von Niederösterreich. Der Name St. Pölten geht auf den heiligen Hippolytos zurück, nach dem die Stadt benannt wurde.

Die Altstadt befindet sich dort, wo vom 2. bis zum 4. Jahrhundert die Römerstadt *Aelium Cetium* stand. 799 wurde der Ort als "Treisma" erwähnt. Das Marktrecht erhielt St. Pölten um 1050, zur Stadt erhoben wurde es 1159. Bis 1494 stand St. Pölten im Besitz des Bistums Passau, dann wurde es landesfürstliches Eigentum. Bereits 771 findet sich ein Benediktinerkloster, ab 1081 gab es Augustiner-Chorherren, 1784 wurde deren Kollegiatsstift aufgehoben, das Gebäude dient seit 1785 als Bischofssitz. Zur Landeshauptstadt von Niederösterreich wurde St. Pölten mit Landtagsbeschluss vom 10. Juli 1986, seit 1997 ist es Sitz der Niederösterreichischen Landesregierung.

Figure 11 Aerial view of St. Pölten

Luftbild von St. Pölten

56.4.1 Vokabeln 5B

```
Die Altstadt               old town
Der Augustiner             Augustinian
Der Besitz                 possession, holding
Das Bistum                 diocese
Der Bischofssitz           bishop's see (a seat of a bishop's authority)
Die Bundesländer           federal states
Die Chorherren             men's choir
Das Eigentum               proprietorship
Die Einwohner              inhabitants
Das Gebäude                premises
Die Geschichte             history
Das Jahrhundert            century
Das Kloster                monastery, friary
Das Kollegiatsstift        monastery college
Die Landeshauptstadt       regional or state capital city
Die Landesregierung        provincial (state) government
Der Landtagsbeschluss      day of jurisdictional reorganization
Das Marktrecht             right to hold markets
Der Name                   name
Der Ort                    place, spot, city
Die Römerstadt             Roman town
Der Sitz                   official place
```

```
Bistum Passau              a dioecian region in Bavaria
sowohl... als auch         both... and
zurück auf                 goes back to
```

```
aufheben (hob auf, aufgehoben) merged in (or turned into?)
befinden sich              situated, located
(befand sich, haben sich befunden)
finden sich*               found (located)
benennen (benannte, benannt)   call (as to label)
erhalten (erhielt, erhalten)   receive
erheben (erhob, erhoben)       arise, raise
erwähnen (erwähnte, erwähnt)   mention
stehen (stand, gestanden)      stand (stood, stood)
werden (wurde, [ist]geworden)  become
```

```
ab                         from
auf                        up
bereits                    already
bis                        until, by, up to
flächenmäßig               (no direct translation) ~ when measured in
surface
heilig                     holy
landesfürstlich            baronial or princely (holdings)
nach                       in terms of
um                         around
```

(* one short form of anfinden: findet sich (an); in colloquial language you can cut the "an"; but in THIS special case it is the short form of "(be)findet sich (dort)")

Pronunciation Guide[1] >>

- Read more about St. Pölten[2] at the German Wikipedia (source of article above).

---

1   Chapter 84 on page 325
2   http://de.wikipedia.org/wiki/St._P%C3%B6lten

57 Lesson 3.06 - Undeveloped

----

58 Section 3.03 ˜ Bavaria, Germany

59 Lesson 3.07 - Undeveloped

60 Lesson 3.08 - Undeveloped

61 Lesson 3.09 - Undeveloped

----

62 LEVEL FOUR LESSONS

63 Contents

- #Section 01 ˜ Kiel, Germany[1]
- #Section 02 ˜ Schaan, Liechtenstein[2]
- #Section 03 ˜ Schaffhausen, Switzerland[3]

---

1   Chapter 56.4.1 on page 207
2   Chapter 56.4.1 on page 207
3   Chapter 56.4.1 on page 207

64 Section 01 ˜ Kiel, Germany

----

65 Section 02 ˜ Schaan, Liechtenstein

----

66 Section 03 ˜ Schaffhausen, Switzerland

----

67 LEVEL FIVE LESSONS

----

68 GRAMMAR

69 Contents

---

70 Adjectives and Adverbs

70.1 Adjectives

Adjectives are words that describe nouns. Most adjectives are stand-alone words; however, present and past participles can also be used as adjectives. Numbers are also adjectives, though they do not decline.

Adjectives may be either *predicate* or *attributive*. Predicate adjectives are adjectives connected to a noun through a verb known as a *copula*. Those verbs in German are *sein* (to be), *werden* (to become), and *bleiben* (to remain). Other verbs, such as *machen* and *lassen* impart a predicate adjective onto an accusative object. Predicate adjectives are *never inflected*.

Ich bin noch *ledig.* (I am still single.)
Trotz des Streites bleiben wir *verheiratet.* (Despite the argument we remain married.)
Ich werde böse. (I am getting angry.)
Die alte Milch wird dich *krank* machen. (The old milk will make you sick.)

Attributive adjectives precede the noun that they are describing, and are *always declined*. Learning the adjective endings is a central part to the study of German. The adjective endings are frequently one of the hardest topics for new students to learn. It is best to commit the declension tables to memory, while attempting to speak independently. Proper use of adjective endings, especially in speaking, will come with repeated use. They are described in the next part of this chapter.

70.2 Adjective Endings

70.2.1 Forms

This section will make use of the mnemonic **Oklahoma**, which denotes the fields of nominative masculine; nominative neuter; accusative neuter; nominative feminine; and accusative feminine, which resemble the state of Oklahoma in the tables used below. The concept is used to describe endings in two declension tables: the weak adjective declension, and the indefinite-article/ein-word declension.

The endings of attributive adjectives can be divided into two groups: *strong* endings and *weak* endings.

Strong Adjective Declension				
Case	Masculine	Neuter	Feminine	Plural

Strong Adjective Declension				
Case	Masculine	Neuter	Feminine	Plural
Nominative	-er	-es	-e	-e
Accusative	-en	-es	-e	-e
Dative	-em	-em	-er	-en
Genitive	**-en**	**-en**	-er	-er

The strong adjective endings are nearly the same as the der-word endings, with the exceptions of masculine and neuter adjectives in the genitive case (marked in bold).

Figure 12   Note the shape of the state Oklahoma

Weak Adjective Declension				
Case	Masculine	Neuter	Feminine	Plural
Nominative	**-e**	**-e**	**-e**	-en
Accusative	-en	**-e**	**-e**	-en
Dative	-en	-en	-en	-en
Genitive	-en	-en	-en	-en

Make note of the region, **Oklahoma**, in the nominative and accusitive cases, for weak endings.

The use of a weak or a strong adjective ending depends on what precedes it:

Choice of Adjective Ending	
Preceding Article	**Choice of Ending**
Definite Article, der-words	Weak Ending
Indefinite Article, ein-words	Within Oklahoma, Strong Ending
	Outside Oklahoma, Weak Ending
No article	Strong Ending

The principle guiding adjective endings is that a noun, when possible, should have a primary case ending. Definite articles and der-words always provide a primary case ending. Indefinite

articles and ein-words provide primary case endings outside of Oklahoma. Sometimes nouns have no article, in which case adjectives provide the primary case ending.

70.2.2 Forms in Context of Articles

This terminology - strong and weak endings - is confusing for many students. As the student develops, he or she will develop an ear for case endings, and will recognize when a noun has and has not received a case ending. Nonetheless, it is worth providing the three declension tables that result from this principle.

Adjective Declension following a Definite Article or der-word				
Case	**Masculine**	**Neuter**	**Feminine**	**Plural**
	the large man	the small book	the quiet cat	the red apples
Nominative	der große Mann	das kleine Buch	die ruhige Katze	die roten Äpfel
Accusative	den großen Mann			
Dative	dem großen Mann	dem kleinen Buch	der ruhigen Katze	den roten Äpfeln
Genitive	des großen Mannes	des kleinen Buches		der roten Äpfel

Adjectives following a definite article or der-word always have a weak ending. Within Oklahoma, that is "-e", and outside of Oklahoma, that is "-en". Also dies.., jed.., manch.., welch.., solch.. and all.. get the same ending as in the table above.

Adjective Declension following an Indefinite Article or ein-word				
Case	**Masculine**	**Neuter**	**Feminine**	**Plural**
	a large man	a small book	a quiet cat	no red apples
Nominative	ein großer Mann	ein kleines Buch	eine ruhige Katze	keine roten Äpfel
Accusative	einen großen Mann			
Dative	einem großen Mann	einem kleinen Buch	einer ruhigen Katze	keinen roten Äpfeln
Genitive	eines großen Mannes	eines kleinen Buches		keiner roten Äpfel

Note how, within Oklahoma, adjectives take strong endings, and outside Oklahoma, they take weak endings. This is because indefinite articles provide primary endings only outside of Oklahoma. Also mein.., dein.., sein.., ihr.., unser.., euer.. and Ihr.. get the same ending as in the table above.

Adjective Declension with no preceding article				
Case	**Masculine**	**Neuter**	**Feminine**	**Plural**
Nominative	großer Mann	kleines Buch	ruhige Katze	rote Äpfel
Accusative	großen Mann			
Dative	großem Mann	kleinem Buch	ruhiger Katze	roten Äpfeln
Genitive	großen Mannes	kleinen Buches		roter Äpfel

Forms of nouns without articles are rare compared to those with definite and indefinite articles; however, one must still know the strong declension. Note that the strong adjective

declension is almost the same as the der-word endings, with the exceptions of masculine and neuter in the genitive case (in bold).

70.3 Adverbs

Adverbs based on adjectives are one of the simplest parts of German grammar. Any adjective can be used as an adverb simply by placing its uninflected form within the sentence, usually towards the end.

> `Das Ehepaar ging gestern` *fröhlich* `spazieren.`
> (The married couple went for a walk joyfully yesterday.)

Other adverbs have no adjectival equivalent. Many of these express time.

> *Damals* (at that time)
> Ich bin *gestern* dort gewesen. (I was there yesterday.)
> *Morgens* bin ich normalerweise im Büro. (I am normally in the office in the morning.)

Adverbs can also be based on participles (past and present). These are less common.

> `Er betrachtete mich` *bedrohlich*. (He looked at me threateningly.)

Some adverbs are formed by adding *-weise* to adjectives and nouns in the plural form, and mean "regarding", "with respect to", or "-wise" in English. Construction of new adverbs of this sort is usually frowned upon.

70.3.1 Adverbs based on prepositions

Much of the material in this section will be explained in greater detail in the chapter on prepositions.

German has a complex system of adverbs based on prepositions, which are used to indicate direction of motion, location, time, and other concepts. English also possesses such a system, though it is used less. Consider the following sentences in English:

> 1) `Could you take the garbage` *out*?
> 2) Come *over* this evening if you get the chance.
> 3) You should just give *up*.
> 4) I will look you *up* in the phone book.
> 5) The contract, and the conditions contained *therein*, is *hereby* declared null and
>   void. (Legalese)

In both English and German, prepositions and particles derived from prepositions are treated as adverbs. In many cases, these prepositional adverbs are associated with specific verbs.

In the first two examples, the italicized prepositions are used as adverbs of motion; in the first example, the word "out" indicates the direction "out of the apartment"; in the second case, "over" not only means means the direction "towards", but also implies visitation of a residence.

The third and fourth examples correspond to *separable-prefix verbs* in German. The word "up" is integral to the verb, which would have a different meaning without the adverb. "To give up", whose infinitive in German would be "to up-give", means "to quit", in sharp contrast to "to give". In the fourth example, it is not even possible to "look someone", whereas it is possible to "look someone up," or "look a candidate's resume over". (English even has inseparable prepositional prefix verbs; compare "to look s.o. over" to "to overlook s.o." Many of these verbs have been replaced by verbs based on Latin and Greek.)

The adverbs in the fifth example correspond to *da-, wo-, hin- and her-* compounds in German. Such compounds are often used in legal texts in English. In such compounds, the object of the preposition is replaced with the words "there" or "here", compounded with the preposition. "Therein" simply means "in it".

The German system of adverbs based on prepositions is considerably more rigorous, and forms the basis of a large part of the language's morphology. "To catch on" means "to begin" in English; In German, the primary word for "to begin" is literally "to catch on" (*anfangen*), from which the equivalent noun, *der Anfang* (the beginning) is derived. A remnant of this in English can be found when describe a child's *upbringing*.

As in English, prepositional adverbs in German to varying degrees alter the meaning of their associated verb.

Separable-prefix verbs. This topic is better explored in the chapter on verbs. Separable prefixes are themselves *adverbs*. As in English, many of them are integral to the meaning of the verb. *Fangen* means "to catch," whereas *anfangen* means "to begin".

Most prepositional adverbs are treated as part of the root word in the infinitive, and are used as such in the construction of participles. However, not all possible separable-prefix verbs are lexical; "vorbeikommen" (to come over), "vorbeibringen" (to bring over), and so on, may not all be listed in a dictionary. It is better to learn "vorbei" as an adverb implying visitation.

The German prefix *in* is of note. It has two adverbial forms. As *in* it describes location; when describing movement, it becomes *ein*. Thus, for example, *darin* means "in there", whereas *darein* means "in(to) there". Another example is the word, *einleiten*, to introduce.

Hin- and *her-*. Prepositional adverbs of motion are usually based on *hin-*, implying motion or direction away from the speaker, and *her-*, implying motion or direction towards the speaker. *Hin* and *her* are themselves stand-alone adverbs meaning the same thing, and describe less-specific motion or direction. (One example in which *hin* is an integral separable prefix is the verb *hinrichten*, which means "to execute.) Not all verbs formed from *hin-* and *her-* compounds are lexical. Some examples of *hin-* and *her-* compounds are:

herab (down, down from)
hinein (in, inside)
hinaus (out, out of, onto)

> *darüber hinaus* (furthermore, above all)
> *dahin* (in the direction/towards of known location)

Mastery of *hin-* and *her-* requires considerable effort from the student.

Da- compounds are also adverbs, corresponding to "there-" compounds in English. They replace specific prepositional objects. Although are used principally in legal texts and therefore sound formal in English, they are often employed in written and spoken German and are convenient replacements for long and complicated prepositional phrases. Their comprehension and active use are essential in German. *Da-* compounds are formed by adding *da-* before the preposition, with an "r" inserted before prepositions starting with a vowel. There are exceptions to this, and *da-* compounds are given a fuller treatment in the chapter on prepositions.

Hier- and *dort-* compounds also exist in German, though they are used less frequently. As in English, they are considered formal, and are used primarily in academic and legal texts. They are best memorized as vocabulary.

> *hierhin und dorthin* - hither and thither

it:Tedesco/Declinazione dell'aggettivo[1] pt:Alemão/Gramática/Adjetivos e advérbios[2]

1   http://it.wikibooks.org/wiki/Tedesco%2FDeclinazione%20dell%27aggettivo
2   http://pt.wikibooks.org/wiki/Alem%C3%A3o%2FGram%C3%A1tica%2FAdjetivos%20e%20adv%C3%A9rbios

71 Articles

72 Nouns

72.1 What Is a Noun?

A word that can be used to refer to a person, place, thing, quality, or idea; part of speech. It can serve as the subject or object of a verb. For example a table or a computer. Nouns start with a capital letter in written language.

72.2 Plurals

German, unlike English, has more than one way to make nouns plural, and plural form, like gender, must be memorized with every noun.

There are twelve different ways to form plurals in German. They are formed by affixes at the end of the word, and the umlaut of the vowel of the stem. They are - (changing nothing); -¨; -e; -¨e; -n; -¨n; -en; -¨en; -er; -¨er; -nen (to feminine suffix *-in*); -s (mainly with English loan-words); adding "foreign" endings (mainly Latin words); and changing suffixes (mainly Latin words).

When German nouns are used in the plural, their gender becomes irrelevant. The plural can almost be thought of as a gender on its own. In the plural, the definite article is always "die" when using the nominative and accusative cases.

When using the dative case, "den" is the definite article of all plurals. All plurals not ending in -n or -s affix an *-n*.

The definite article of the plural in the genitive case is "der".

Examples

Nominative: ***Die alten Männer*spielen Schach.** *The old men* are playing chess.

Accusative: **Ich sah *die alten Männer*beim Schachspielen.** I saw *the old men* as they played chess.

Dative: **Ich spielte mit *den alten Männern*Schach.** I played chess with *the old men.*

Genitive: **Das Schachspiel *der alten Männer*war nicht sehr spannend.** *The old men's* chess game was not very exciting.

72.2.1 Suffixes

Although gender and plural form are often arbitrary, there exist certain suffixes whose gender and plural form are regular. They are mainly feminine.

-ung, -heit, -keit, -schaft, -ion, and -tät

These are all feminine endings, which are pluralized by **-en**.

- *Diskussion(en)*

  Discussion(s)

- *Universtät(en)*

  University(ies)

-unft

This endings is feminine and is pluralized by **changing the stem vowel and adding -e**

- *Unterkunft*

  Lodging

- *Unterkünfte*

  Lodgings

-ik

This ending often doesn't have a plural. When it does however, you add **-en**

- *Technik(en)*

  Technique(s)

Other

When verb infinitives transform into nouns, they do not have a plural form.

- *das Sprechen*

  Language

Many masculine nouns are formed by verbal stems without a suffix. Many of these receive an umlaut in their plural form.

72.3 Gender

German, like many other languages, gives each noun a gender: Masculine, Feminine, and Neuter. Plural nouns also act differently not only with the verb of the sentence, but the article preceding it.

The way any particular word is classified may not be logical.

Examples:

```
das Mädchen      the girl (neuter)
die Person       the person (feminine - even when talking about a man)
```

However, not all German Nouns are randomly allocated a gender. The following notes will apply to most nouns but not all.

A note on Mädchen:

This is derived from the diminutive form of Maid (old, rarely used) - Maidchen. Grammatically it is neuter, but when referenced, nowadays the logical feminine gender takes over: Das Mädchen und ihr Hund. (Das Mädchen und sein Hund would be used in German slang but is rare and shouldn't be used.)

72.3.1 Masculine

There are far more masculine nouns than of either of the other genders. The masculine nominative definite article is **der**.

72.3.2 Semantic Groups Which Are Masculine

```
days              z.B. der Montag
times of the day  z.B. der Morgen
months            z.B. der August
seasons           z.B. der Sommer
male persons*     z.B. der Mann, der König
male animals      z.B. der Löwe, der Hahn, der Ochse
alcohol**         z.B. der Wein, der Likör, der Alkohol, der Champagner
car***            z.B. der Wagen, der Opel, der Mercedes, der BMW
```

* With, of course, the exception of **die Person** which remains feminine even when talking about a man.

** However, it is **das Bier**, **die Spirituose** (because of the ending "-ose"), **das Pils** (because it is a beer), **das Methanol** (because it is a scientific term of a substance)

*** Excepting "das Auto".

Words with Certain Endings

These rules apply always

```
 -ismus: der Kommunismus, der Anglizismus, der Terrorismus
-ling: der Lehrling (apprentice), der Liebling (darling), der Schmetterling
(butterfly)
-or: der Motor
-ant: der Elefant
```

Exceptions:

neuter: Recycling, Restaurant, Labor

The following groups of nouns are usually (but not always) masculine

```
Nouns ending in -el:    der Vogel
Nouns ending in -er:    der Hamster
Nouns ending in -en:    der Kuchen (but not infinitives used as nouns. They are
neuter: das Rauchen, das Lachen)
```

```
Nouns ending in -aum:
```

Examples:

Baum, Traum, Schaum, Raum, Saum, Flaum

```
Nouns ending in -ang:
```

Examples:

Drang, Fang, Gang, Hang, Klang, Rang, Anfang, Empfang, Gesang, Tang

```
Nouns ending in -und:
```

Examples:

Bund, Grund, Schund, Hund, Fund, Schwund, Schlund, Mund

Exceptions:

neuter: Pfund

```
Nouns ending in -all:
```

Examples:

Ball, Fall, Krawall, Drall, Hall, Wall, Aufprall, Kristall, Knall, Schall, Zufall, Abfall, Vorfall, Schwall

Exceptions:

neuter: All, Metall, Intervall

feminine: Nachtigall

72.3.3 Feminine

The feminine Gender article is *die*. It is used in the nominative and accusative singular case. It is also used to indicate nominative and accusative plural for nouns of any gender.

e.g. die Katze — Feminine

```
            -or-
     die Katzen - feminine plural
     die Männer - masculine plural
     die Mädchen - neuter plural
```

Semantic Groups

Female persons and animals are usually feminine (very few exceptions).

Examples:

```
   die Frau (woman)
   die Schwester (sister)
   die Mutter (mother)
```

To change a male designation to feminine, you often use the ending **-in**.

```
   der Lehrer - die Lehrerin (teacher)
   der Kaiser - die Kaiserin (emperor and empress)
   der König - die Königin (king and queen)
   der Arzt - die Ärztin (doctor)
   der Löwe - die Löwin (lion and lioness)
```

Exceptions

```
   das Mädchen (girl)
   das Kind (child)
   das Fräulein (old fashioned for Miss)
```

A lot of plants and trees are also feminine

Examples:

```
   die Buche (beech)
   die Eiche (oak)
   die Rose (rose)
   die Tulpe (tulip)
   die Nelke (carnation)
```

Exceptions:

> ```
> das Veilchen (violet), der Farn (fern) ...
> ```

Words With Certain Endings

The following rules always apply.

German words:

> **-heit**: die Gesundheit (health), die Wahrheit (truth)
> **-keit**: die Möglichkeit (possibility)
> **-schaft**: die Wirtschaft, die Freundschaft
> **-ei**: die Türkei, die Mongolei, die Bäckerei*

> ```
> Words derived from verbs with the ending -ung:
> ```
> die Beobachtung (observation; v: beobachen), die Verfolgung (persecution; v:
> verfolgen)

> ```
> Words derived from verbs (mostly irregular verbs), ending in -t:
> ```
> die Handschrift (hand writing (n), derived from "schreiben),
> die Fahrt (journey, trip or ride, derived from fahren)

Exceptions

> ```
> * das Ei (egg) has nothing to do with the ending -ei.
> ```
>
> *Das Ei* is neuter, including all words derived from:
> z.B. das Spiegelei, das Rührei, das Vogelei (different types of eggs)
> * der Papagei (parrot)

Foreign words: Words with the endings given below are always stressed on the last syllable.

> **-enz**: die Intelligenz (intelligence), die Konsequenz (consequence)
> **-ie**: die Philosophie (philosophy), die Melodie (melody)
> **-ik**: die Musik (music), die Politik (politics)
> **-ion**: die Nation, die Qualifikation (qualification)
> **-ur**: die Kultur (culture)

> **-tät**:
> Examples:
>
> Universität, Majestät, Lokalität, Pietät, Integrität, Qualität, Aktivität,
> Priorität, Nationalität, Kapazität

> **-age**:
> Examples:
>
> Garage, Montage, Etage, Spionage, Persiflage, Blamage

The following rule applies often.

> **-e**: die Lampe (lamp), die Karte (card, map)

Exceptions:

> semantic reasons: der Junge (boy), der Franzose (French man), der Löwe (Lion)
> others: der Käse (cheese)

72.3.4 Neuter

The neutral Gender article is *das* for the nominative and accusative case.

Semantic Groups

> names of colors: das Blau, das Rot, das Gelb, das Hellgrün, das Dunkelbraun

Words With Certain Endings

This rule applies always:

> diminutive endings **-lein** and **-chen**:
> das Mädchen (girl), das Häuschen (little house), das Büchlein (little book)

This rules apply often:

> ending **-um** if the word has Latin origin: : das Zentrum, das Museum
> ending **-ment**: das Parlament (parliament), das Fundament (base, basis), das Element
> (element)

> Words that end with **-em** and are stressed on the last syllable:

Examples:

Problem, Theorem, System, Extrem

> Foreign words that end with **-ett** and are stressed on the last syllable:

Examples:

Tablett, Etikett, Korsett, Parkett, Kabarett, Ballett

Nouns

> Words that end with **-ma**:

Examples:

Thema, Trauma, Drama, Dilemma, Prisma, Schema, Koma, Klima, Komma, Karma, Lama, Dogma, Paradigma

Exceptions:

feminine: Firma

> Words that end with **-o**:

Examples:

Auto, Radio, Video, Kino, Kilo, Büro, Sakko, Solo, Storno, Bistro, Manko, Banjo, Tempo, Motto, Fresko, Embargo, Esperanto, Studio, Ghetto, Foto, Echo, Piano, Cello, Kasino

Exceptions:

masculine: Tango, Fango, Espresso, Embryo

> Foreign words that end with **-om**:

Examples:

Syndrom, Palindrom, Phantom, Polynom, Binom, Monom, Atom, Axiom, Genom, Symptom, Diplom, Kondom, Chromosom

Words With Certain Beginnings

> Nouns that begin with **Ge-** are often neuter.

Examples: Gedicht, Gericht, Gesicht, Gewicht, Geheimnis, Gebirge, Geschirr, Gedächtnis, Gebiet, Gespenst, Gewissen, Gesetz, Getränk, Gewand, Gewitter, Geschenk, Gespräch, Gebäude, Gehäuse, Gemüse, Geschäft, Getreide, Gerücht, Gewerbe

Exceptions:

masculine: Gedanke, Genuss, Geschmack, Gewinn, Geruch

feminine: Gewalt, Gestalt, Geschichte, Gemeinde, Gefahr

Nouns Derived From Certain Verbclasses

```
Verbs used as noun (roughly corresponding to the gerund)
das Rauchen (Smoking), das Lesen (Reading)
```

72.3.5 Tips For Learning

As most German articles can not be attributed to certain rule, it is best to always learn the article when learning the noun. You may think of the article as necessary information belonging to every noun. You avoid a lot of looking-up-time that way.

72.3.6 Looking Up Gender in Dictionaries

Most dictionaries do not give the article. Instead, you find different sets of abbreviations which tell you to which class the noun in question belongs.

The most common sets of abbreviations are:

r, **e**, and **s**.
r: de*r*, masculine;
e: di*e*, feminine;
s: da*s*, neuter.
The abbreviations of this type are usually given before the noun.

m, **f**, and **n**.

m: masculine;
f: feminine;
n: neuter.
The abbreviations of this type are usually given after the noun.

m, **w**, and **s**.

m: **m**ännlich, masculine;
w: **w**eiblich, feminine;
s: **s**ächlich, neuter.
The abbreviations of this type are usually given after the noun.

72.4 Contents

- /Adjectival Nouns/[1]
- /Weak Nouns/[2]
- /Mixed Nouns/[3]

---

1   http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/%2FAdjectival%20Nouns%2F

2   http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/%2FWeak%20Nouns%2F

3   http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/%2FMixed%20Nouns%2F

73 Gender

74 Plurals

75 Adjectival Nouns

76 Weak Nouns

77 Mixed Nouns

78 Pronouns

German Pronouns Declined	Nominative	Accusative	Dative	Genitive	Possessive Pronoun
Singular					
I	ich	mich	mir	meiner	mein-
You (informal singular)	du	dich	dir	deiner	dein-
He	er	ihn	ihm	seiner	sein-
It	es	es	ihm	seiner	sein-
She	sie	sie	ihr	ihrer	ihr-
Plural					
We (us)	wir	uns	uns	unser	unser-
You (informal plural)	ihr	euch	euch	euer	euer- (shortened to eur- for "eure")
They	sie	sie	ihnen	ihrer	ihr-
You (formal - singular or plural)	Sie	Sie	Ihnen	Ihrer	Ihr-

Note: The possessive is not a case of the personal pronoun, rather it's a pronoun itself. This table shows the possessive pronoun's stem, which is declined as an ein-word (like the indefinite article).

The genitive case indicates possession or association, and is equivalent to, and replaces, the English word "of". "Des" and "der" (do not confuse with masculine singular nominative) mean "of the"; "eines" and "einer" mean "of a/an"; and, "der Sohn guten Weins" means "the son of good wine" (no article, M, Gen strong adj). Strict replacement of the genitive case with the word "of" maintains the word-order of the German nominal phrase: possessed - possessor (in genitive). The genitive case also replaces "'s" in English, though reversing the word-order (in English: possessor's possessed). German itself also uses an "s" (though without the apostrophe) to indicate possession, in the same word order as English. It is used mainly with proper nouns, such as "Goethes Heimat", as well as for compounding words.

Standard genitive constructions are used with nouns and modifiers of nouns such as articles and adjectives, and the inflection they receive implies possession. The first noun may be in any case and may occur in any part of the sentence; the second noun, which possesses the first noun, immediately follows the first noun, and is in the genitive case. The noun in the genitive case need not have any modifiers - e.g., Heimat Goethes, Heimat Katerina, which mean the homeland of Goethe and Katerina, respectively - though such constructions can be cumbersome and ambiguous.

Proper treatment of the genitive case, including all of the declensions, is found in another part of this book.

German pronouns have genitive forms, but they are used only rarely nowadays, mostly in archaic or formal German. In many cases, a preposition can be added to allow a different case to be used.

```
Ich erinnere mich ihrer. (I remember her)
Also possible: Ich erinnere mich an sie.
```

```
Wir gedachten seiner. (We thought of him)
Also possible: Wir dachten an ihn.
```

```
Herr, erbarme dich unser! (Lord, have mercy upon us)
Also possible: Herr, erbarme dich über uns.
```

The possessive pronouns (mein-, dein-, unser-, etc.) are almost identical in form to the genitive pronouns and but they directly modify their attribute and could be conceived of as adjectives, though they decline differently. Alternatively, one could think of possessive pronouns, e.g., "mein-", as replacing the phrase, "of me". Directly translated, "mein-" means "my" in English.

Examples:

```
   I want the teacher's book. Let's rewrite this as: I want the book of the
   teacher.
   -Ich will das Buch des Lehrers (der Lehrerin).
```

--The genitive case here is masculine (feminine) singular, inflecting the definite article (des/der) as well as the noun (Lehrer (+s), but not Lehrerin, which doesn't change because it is feminine).

```
   Without his friend's car, we cannot go home.
   -Ohne den Wagen seines Freundes können wir nicht nach Hause fahren.
```

--Here, two possessive relationships are mentioned. The car belongs to the friend, and the friend belongs to "him". For illustrative purposes, one could conceivably re-write the prepositional phrase as "without the car (accusitive case) of the friend of him". German's rendering is far less awkward.

```
   The wall of the building is old and brown.
   -Die Wand des Gebäudes ist alt und braun.
```

--As in the first example, the genitive case here is in the masculine singular, and inflects the definite article and the noun (M,N add +s/+es in the genitive case).

79 Comparison of Pronouns to other Parts of Speech

Despite the difficulty many people have in learning German declensions, case-endings in German correspond to each other to a considerable degree. Specifically, the pronouns bear an obvious resemblance to their parent direct articles. Learning the corresponding 3rd-person declensions side-by-side allows some people to comprehend the declension pattern more easily.

As discussed above, possessive pronouns replace the genitive case for pronouns. In this table, they will be placed where the genitive case is, so that their similiarities to other parts of speech that actually are in the genitive case can become clear.

German is very rigorous in its use of gender, and will use the pronoun corresponding to the gender of the referential noun, regardless of whether the noun being referenced is a person (unlike English, which uses "it" for everything not a person or other entities (animals, ships) in certain contexts). *Der Liberalismus* will be referred to as "er", or "he", whereas "das Mädchen" would be "es", or "it". Many English speakers have trouble with this, especially in spoken language. Mastery is nonetheless possible with a proper understanding of German declension and a considerable amount of practice.

Side-by-side Declension of Definite Articles, der-word Endings, 3rd-Person Pronouns (and possessives), Strong Adjective Endings, and Interrogative Pronouns, to illustrate their similarities

Gender and Case	Definite Article	der-word Endings	Pronoun (possessive)	Strong Adjective Endings	Interrogative Pronouns, sometimes also used as relative pronouns
Masculine					
Nominative	der	-er	er	-er	wer (who?)
Accusative	den	-en	ihn	-en	wen (whom?)
Dative	dem	-em	ihm	-em	wem (to/for whom?)
Genitive	des + s	-es	(sein-) (corresponding "s")	-en (M,N strong adjective endings in genitive case do not fit pattern)	(wessen) (whose? - form similar to masculine, genitive relative pronoun). N.B.(1)
Neuter					
Nominative	das	-es	es	-es	was (what?)
Accusative	das	-es	es	-es	was (what?)
Dative	dem	-em	ihm	-em	
Genitive	des + s	-es	(sein-) (corresponding "s")	-en (M,N strong adjective endings in genitive case do not fit pattern)	
Feminine					
Nominative	die	-e	sie	-e	
Accusative	die	-e	sie	-e	
Dative	der	-er	ihr	-er	
Genitive	der	-er	(ihr-)	-er	
Plural					
Nominative	die	-e	sie	-e	
Accusative	die	-e	sie	-e	
Dative	den + n	-en	ihnen N.B.(2)	-en	
Genitive	der	-er	(ihr-)	-er	

N.B.(1) The use of "wessen" is considered old-fashioned, though most Germans would find it endearing to hear a non-native speaker use the word. One is encouraged to use the "gehören + dativ (wem?)" construction, which means "to belong to s.o. (whom?)".

N.B.(2) The dative plural. Except for words whose plural form adds an "-s" (mainly loan-words), and words whose plural form already ends in "-n"/"-en", all nouns add an "-n/-en" in the dative plural. Like the s's added to masculine and neuter nouns in the genitive, this is a remnant from when German inflected all of its nouns, which other languages based on declension, such as Russian and Latin, retain. Sometimes one will notice an "-e" after masculine and neuter nouns in the dative case, such as the dedication on the Reichstag building - "Dem deutschen Volke", "for the German People".

This nominal declension is reflected in the dative plural pronoun (to/for them), "ihnen", instead of "ihn" (masculine, accusitive). For example,

```
Helga: Können Sie bitte meinen Brüdern helfen?
Olga: Natürlich, aber ich kann ihnen leider nur nach zwei Tagen helfen.
Helga: Unsere Leben gehen trotzdem weiter.
```

Make a point of studying and getting used to the dative plural.

80 Sentences

80.1 Sentence Structure in Main clauses

Here is the ultimate syntax guide for a main clause. German allows a considerable amount of syntactical freedom as parts of speech are indicated through case, rather than syntax. Nonetheless, there are conventions to follow, especially ones that reduce the ambiguity of pronouns.

Word-Order in the Main Clause

First Position	Anything	Used for emphasis. Sometimes people will even put a past participle or some other verb in the first position. You shouldn't do that until you know what you are doing. The first position is often used for the subject (Nominative), however.
Second Position	Conjugated Verb	"habe", "muss", "arbeitete"
Mittelfeld	Nominative Pronoun	"ich"
	Reflexive Pronoun	"mich", "uns"
	Accusative Pronoun	**A** "dich"
	Dative Pronoun	**D** "dir", "mir"
	(Temporal Expressions)	Expressions of time, especially short temporal adverbs, are often placed here.
	Nominative Noun	"die Katze"
	Dative Noun	**D** "meiner Mutter"
	Accusative Noun	**A** = **ADDA** "meinen Vater"
	Prepositional Phrases	Time, Manner, Place
	Adverbs, Predicate Adjectives	Time, Manner Place
	Verbal negation using "nicht"	see section on negation for proper treatment of this topic
Final Position All Remaining Verbs	Separable Prefixes	"Ich fange damit *an*!"
	Past Participles (conjugated verb should be either "haben" od. "sein)	"Ich habe heute nicht *gearbeitet.*"
	Infinitives	Used with modal verb as conjugated verb. "Du sollst das nicht *tun.*"
		Used with modal-like verbs (sehen, hören, helfen, lassen) "Ich höre dich *atmen.*"
	Extended verb phrases: three verbs in sentence	Build Inwards
		Translating a hypothetical English sentence with three verbs into German, the first English verb - the conjugated verb - would be in the second position in the German sentence. The second verb will be on the outside of the verb-phrase, at the end of the German sentence. The third verb will be immediately before that. Subj . 1 . [Mittelfeld] . 3 . 2.

Word-Order in the Main Clause

		"Ich *habe (1)* seit dem Unfall nicht *arbeiten (3) können (2)*." "I have (1) not been able (2) to work (3) since the accident."
Nachfeld	The stuff you forgot to say, or that you just thought of after saying your verb. This happens to both native-speakers and those learning the language. However, try to avoid it.	This position is also used for comparisons. See below.

This is the officially-sanctioned syntax of a main clause. However, German syntax is not written in stone. One has considerable latitude in the way one constructs one's sentence. Before fleshing out the topic, here are some rules, conventions, and words of advice:

1) In terms of being placed in proper syntax, the pronouns are the most important, for they are the ones most liable to ambiguity ("sie" = which person, what part of speech, which case? Put it in its correct position).

2) It is not possible for a sentence to include all of the listed items, but it is still good to be able to reproduce that schema from memory.

3) You must be able to recognize an element of a sentence. For example, you must not split something like, "mit einem Buch", for that is a prepositional phrase, i.e., one and only one sentence element. Many other sentence elements are, however, only one word. You get a lot better at this as time goes on.

4) Two good mnemonics. Number one: pronouns before nouns. always. even if it feels weird to put both your accusative and dative objects before your subject (a noun), you must get used to it. It doesn't happen very often, though.

5) The second one is "ADDA" (i.e., NOT DAAD, the Deutsche Akademische Austausch Dienst). ADDA describes, first, the pronouns (Accusative, then Dative), and then the nouns (Dative, then Accusative). ADDA. think ABBA, but with D's instead of B's.

6) The first position is usually your subject, but can also draw attention to something you want to discuss.

7) As will be explained below, prepositional phrases and adverbs follow the "Time, Manner, Place" format.

8) Beyond reducing/eliminating ambiguity, you actually do have a fair amount of freedom. "Time, Manner, Place" is more a suggestion than a commandment, and most German textbooks tell you to learn the schema laid out above, but then to speak and write your sentences with items in *ascending order of importance.* Put the important stuff at the end. Then you get to your verb, which gives all of the words in the sentence meaning, resulting in a crescendo of emotion and understanding. Or not. But you see how that might work.

9) If you speak enough, your verbs start going to the right places. It will seem perfectly natural that the verb is in the second position, and that the other verbs are at the end. Getting used to subordinate clauses takes more time, but eventually your words go to the right place. Don't worry about making mistakes, but also try not to forget which verb you have waiting in your head until the sentence ends.

10) Banish the terms, "subject", "direct object", and "indirect object" from your head. Get used to explaining things in terms of "nominative", "accusative", "dative", and "genitive". Same goes for "linking-" and "helping-verbs". Start talking about modal verbs, and modal-like verbs.

In general, you have to learn how to talk about grammar to be able to study German successfully.

11) If you can do the declensions in your head, you can do the syntax in your head. Syntax is easier.

80.2 Position of the Verb

80.2.1 Clauses with one verb part - Sätze mit nur einem Verbteil

In a main clause (Hauptsatz), the conjugated verb is in *second position*.

Clauses with one verb part

	First Position (I)	(II)	Mittelfeld	Punctuation
1.	Er	geht	nach Hause	.
2.	Heute Abend	fahre	ich mit dem Auto nach Köln	.
3.	Im Park	machte	er einen langen Spaziergang	.

Second position does not equal *second word*, as you can see above. However, there is only one group of words allowed before the conjugated verb. Such groups of words are called "phrases". While you can put very long phrases in front of the conjugated verb you mustn't use two. Therefore the sentence "Heute Abend ich fahre mit dem Auto nach Köln" is wrong. This is a big difference between English and German syntax.

80.2.2 Clauses with two verb parts - Sätze mit zwei Verbteilen

Clauses with two verb parts

	First Position (I)	(II)	Mittelfeld	Second Verb	Punctuation
4.	Der Junge	zieht	den Mantel	an	.
5.	Der Junge	hat	den Mantel	angezogen	.
6.	Schüler	müssen	Hausaufgaben	machen	.
7.	Gestern	hat	sein Vater ein fantastisches Essen	gekocht	.
8.	Ein fantastisches Essen	hat	sein Vater gestern	gekocht	.

Sometimes you have to use more than one verb part in a clause. This is true for Perfekt forms, separable verbs, modals etc. Only one of these verbs is conjugated. The conjugated verb stays in second position, the other part goes to the end.

80.2.3 Clauses with three verb parts - Sätze mit drei Verbteilen

Clauses with three verb parts

	First Position	II	Mittelfeld	Third Verb	Second Verb	Punctuation
9.	Ich	werde	der morgen	nicht machen	können	.
10.	Du	hast	mich	nicht besuchen	dürfen	.
11.	Ich	kann	dir deinen Wagen übermorgen	umsetzen	helfen	.

Sometimes there are even three verbs in a sentence. These usually involve modals and perfect tenses. The conjugated verb is in the second position. The remaining two verbs are at the end of the clause, *building inwards* that is to mean, what would be the second verb in English is placed at the end, and what would be the third verb is placed before the second verb.

80.3 Order of phrases - Reihenfolge der Satzglieder

In English, you need the position of phrases to determine whether a noun phrase is a subject or an object. In German the cases tell you which role is assigned to a certain noun phrase. Therefore, the word order is less strict.

80.3.1 First Position - erste Position

In neutral sentences the subject is most likely in the first position (Examples 1, 4, 5, 6).

However, you can put everything there you want to stress. This is very common with phrases about time or place (Examples 2, 3, 7). English speakers need to remember that the first position is restricted to exactly one phrase.

You can even put objects in first position (Example 8). You do it mostly, if you want to emphasize the object or if you have to repeat the sentence because your partner has not understood this particular part of it.

If the subject is not in first position, it goes directly after the conjugated verb (Examples 2, 3, 7, 8), unless preceded by a reflexive pronoun or an accusative or dative pronoun.

80.3.2 Order of Phrases in the Middle of the clause - Reihenfolge der Satzglieder im Mittelfeld

Introduction

In the middle of the sentence - the part between the two parts of the verb - word order is quite flexible.

Often the word order for a neutral sentence can be described like this:

1. Time
2. Objects
3. Manner
4. Place

The mnemonic is "STOMP" where S is for subject. However, when looking at wild German sentences you will find structures that do not follow these principles but are nonetheless correct. This is very frequent in spoken language. Mostly the deviation from the neutral structure is caused by a special focus. While they are not wrong, it would be inappropriate to use them all the time. Therefore it is best to learn the principles described here. If you

have mastered them and can use them without thinking about it, you can try some of the deviations.

Time

Time seems to be a very important concept for German speaking people. It is mostly mentioned very early in the sentence, either at the very beginning in the first position which means that the subject goes directly after the conjugated verb (i.e.: Gestern war ich im Kino) or early in the middle field (i.e.: Ich war gestern im Kino). The sentence "Ich war im Kino gestern" is not exactly wrong, but it would sound weird in most situations. It could be used though in a casual conversation when putting special emphasis on "im Kino", but it's not the regular sentence pattern.

Order of Objects

The order of objects is different for nouns and pronouns. Pronouns always come before nouns, and reflexive pronouns come before everything except nominative pronouns. **ADDA**, mentioned above, is a good way to remember the prescribed order of cases for pronouns and then nouns. As sentences can contain only two objects, here are the three possible combinations deriving from ADDA:

Two pronouns: accusative before dative (*AD*)

```
  I   II    Acc. Dat.
  Ich habe  sie  ihm  gegeben.
  Ich gab   sie  ihm         .
```

One noun, one pronoun: The pronoun goes first, regardless of the case

```
  I   II    Pronoun  Noun
  Ich habe  ihm      die Kleider gegeben.
  Ich gab   sie      dem Jungen          .
```

Two nouns: dative before accusative (*DA*)

```
  I   II    Dat.         Acc.
  Ich habe  dem Jungen   die Kleider gegeben.
  Ich gab   dem Jungen   die Kleider        .
```

Manner

This includes adverbs and prepositional phrases describing how, why, and by what methods the event of the sentence has taken place.

Place

This includes adverbs and prepositional phrases describing *location* and *direction*

80.3.3 Satzglieder im Nachfeld

In German grammar the term *Nachfeld* is used to describe parts of the sentence that come **after** the second part of the verb. The *Nachfeld* is neglected in most learner's grammars. It is mostly used in spoken language, when people add something to a sentence as an afterthought or with special emphasis. In **written language** it is important for comparisons. You put them almost exclusively in the nachfeld.

Consider the example *Peter verdient mehr Geld als Paul(**Peter earns more money than Paul**). Now try to convert the sentence to the perfect. If you follow the normal sentence structure rules you would have to write:*Peter hat mehr Geld als Paul verdient**, but this is almost never done. The sentence best accepted by a majority of German speakers is:*Peter hat mehr Geld verdient als Paul**. The comparison is put*after*the past participle.*

Note that the two items being compared must be in the same case. *Du verdienst mehr Geld als ich.* This is also correct grammar in English, though it is now almost obsolete among native English speakers.

80.4 Syntax of Interrogatives and Imperatives

I am putting this up here for the sake of completion.

80.4.1 Interrogatives

Interrogatives (questions) change word order in the first two fields or so. There are two kinds. In a question based on a verb, the conjugated verb comes first. Following that is the same string of pronouns first and nouns thereafter (and other sentence elements and finally the remaining verbs) that was detailed above. The main difference between questions and statements is that the freedom of the first position is eliminated; the item you wanted to emphasize must now find a different position in the sentence. The ascending-order-of-importance convention still holds.

Example:

```
Q: Hast du schon "Fargo" gesehen?
A: "Fargo" habe ich noch nicht gesehen.
```

The second kind of question involves a question word or wo-compound, which always comes at the beginning, and is immediately followed by the conjugated verb. They are then followed by the remaining parts of the sentence in the order outlined above. Be mindful of the case of the question word, and make sure never to use a wo-compound when referring

to a person.

```
Q: Warum hast du "Fargo" nie gesehen? (Why have you never seen "Fargo"?)
A: Ich hatte keine Lust. (I had no interest.)
```

```
Q: Wem hast du geholfen? (Wem = "whom?" in the dative case.) (Whom have you
helped?)
A: Ich habe meiner Mutter geholfen. (I have helped my mother.)
```

```
Q: Bei wem hast du dich beworben?  (From whom have you applied [for a job]?)
A: Beim Geschäft meines Onkels habe ich mich beworben. (I applied at my uncle's
business.)
```

```
Q: Worum hast du dich beworben? (For what did you apply?)
A: Um eine Stelle habe ich mich beworben!  Bist du verrückt? (I applied for a
job!
Are you insane?)
```

And so on.

80.4.2 Imperatives

Imperatives (commands) also slightly alter the aforementioned main-clause sentence structure. Imperatives are formed in several ways:

```
Geh', bitte!  (Please go, informal)
Gehen Sie, bitte! (Please go, formal)
Gehen wir, bitte! (Let's go! Within a group)
```

This sequence - verb in imperative form, perhaps followed by the person to whom it is directed in the nominative case (depending on the kind of imperative used, however) - is then followed by all of the other elements of the sentence, in the aforementioned order.

German-speakers, like English-speakers and the speakers of many other languages, consider the use of the imperative mood to be rude, and, as in English, use a conditional or subjunctive construction to convey requests. This will be dealt with in a different section of this book.

Both of these syntaxes are very easy to master once you understand main-clause syntax.

80.5 Coordinating Conjunctions

Before moving on to subordinate and relative clauses, we must address **coordinating conjunctions** and parallel clauses. A coordinating conjunction is a conjunction that connects two clauses that are able to stand alone, i.e., two main clauses.

Here are some examples in English:

```
I am here and I am glad to see you.
You are grateful for this job, or you are a spoiled brat.
```

Commas are generally optional in English, whereas they used more often in German.

Here are the common coordinating conjunctions one would find in German:

```
German    English
```

```
 aber     but, nevertheless, however
 denn     for, because (rarely used in spoken German; not to be confused with weil)
oder    or
sondern but rather
und     and
```

As coordinating conjunctions connect two independent clauses, they do not affect word-order in the two clauses. The first clause is often separated from the second with a comma - especially if it is a long or complicated clause - after which follows the coordinating conjunction and the second clause.

Here are some examples in German:

```
Ich hasse und ich liebe, und ich weiß nicht warum.  (Odi et amo - Catullus)
Ich bin nicht jung, aber ich bin froh.
```

There are two more constructions to be aware of: *entweder/oder* and *weder/noch*, which correspond to "either/or" and "neither/nor", respectively.

```
Entweder bist du mit uns gemeinsam, oder du bist unser Feind.
```

Entweder/oder and *weder/noch* can also be employed to contrast two items as well as clauses. Note how "entweder" functions as an adverb.

English speakers should take note of the difference between *aber* and *sondern*, both of which can be translated directly as "but". *Aber* means "however". *Sondern* means "rather". Many other languages make this distinction.

Coordinating conjunctions are rather straightforward, and the number of coordinating conjunctions is few.

80.6 Dependent Clauses: Subordinate and Relative Clauses

80.6.1 Introduction

Subordinate and relative clauses introduce information regarding the main clause that needs to be expressed as a separate clause. They are collectively called "dependent clauses"

because they are unable to stand by themselves as independent clauses. Usually, subordinate and relative clauses occupy a part of the main clause that was not fully explained; subordinate clauses tend to fulfill more abstract missing sentence elements than relative clauses do. Here are a few examples in English:

Subordinate Clauses:

> I know *that you are unhappy.*
> We came *because it was your birthday.*
> We came *because we knew* that you were having a rough time.

This last example has two subordinate clauses: *because we knew* and *that you were having a rough time.*

Subordinate clauses are usually set off by a *subordinating conjunction*, such as *that*, *because*, *when*, *if*, and so on. In English, it is sometimes possible to omit the subordinating conjunction, specifically *that*, resulting in sentences such as, "I know you are unhappy," which is perfectly acceptable in English. Such an option does not exist in German.

Relative Clauses:

> I know the person *to whom you were talking* (*who you were talking to*).
> God helps those *who help themselves.*
> You are the person *that got hit by the fly-ball at the game on Saturday.*

Relative clauses relate one element of a clause to another clause by way of a *relative pronoun.* The system of relative pronouns in German is considerably more extensive than that of English.

In German, both subordinate clauses and relative clauses affect syntax, in most cases by moving the conjugated verb to the end of the clause. *Both subordinate clauses and relative clauses are set off by a comma in German,* which can frequently be omitted in English. We should now examine the two types of clauses in greater detail, and then return to their syntax.

80.6.2 Subordinate Clauses

Subordinate clauses are always set off by a comma, and begin with a subordinating conjunction. Here is a list of all subordinating conjunctions in German. Note how all of them answer a question presumably introduced in the main clause:

Subordinating Conjunctions

German	**English**
als	as, when
bevor	before
bis	until
da	as, since (because)
damit	so that, with it
dass	that

Subordinating Conjunctions

German	English
ehe	before
falls	in case
indem	while; "by [do]ing..." See below.
nachdem	after
ob	whether
obgleich	although
obschon	although
obwohl	although
seit/seitdem	since (time)
sobald	as soon as
sodass / so dass	so that
solang(e)	as long as
trotzdem	despite the fact that
während	while, whereas
weil	because
wenn	if, when, whenever

Furthermore, all interrogative (question) words, such as *wie*, *wann*, *wer*, and *wo*, and wo-compounds, may be used as subordinating conjunctions. For example:

```
Ich weiß nicht, wohin er gegangen ist.  (I don't know where he went.)
Ich weiß nicht, wie das Fest sich entwickelt hat.  (I don't know how the party
turned out)
Ich weiß nicht, warum er dir so böse ist.  (I don't know why he is so mad at
you.)
```

Subordinate clauses provide information missing in the main clause. Consider the previous two examples. In both cases, the subordinate clause answered the question, "what?", or what would have been the accusitive object. Other subordinate clauses provide information that would otherwise have been provided by one of the several parts of speech.

```
Er hat mich geschlagen, als meine Frau im Klo war.  (He hit me when my wife was
in the bathroom.)
```

In this example, the subordinate clause, set off by the conjunction, "als", answers the question, "when?", which would otherwise be answered adverbially.

The syntax regarding subordinate clauses will be discussed later. At this point, a property of subordinate clauses that is not altogether shared with relative clauses should be pointed out. Subordinate clauses are themselves *parts of speech* for the main clause, and to a limited extent can be treated as such. Consider the following two sentences, which are equivalent:

```
Ich darf in Kanada bleiben, solange wir noch verheiratet sind.
Solange wir noch verheiratet sind, darf ich in Kanada bleiben.
```

Note how, in the second sentence, the subordinate clause occupied the *first position*, immediately followed by the conjugated verb. In reality, the use of subordinate clauses as parts of speech integrated into the main clause is limited; they are, for aesthetic reasons, restricted to the first position and to following the main clause. At both times they are set off from the main clause by a comma.

Indem..., ist x passiert. This subordinating conjunction accomplishes the same functions as the English construction, "by [do]ing something..., x happened."

```
Indem er die Tür offen gelassen hat, hat er auch die Räuber ins Haus
eingelassen.
By leaving the door open, he let the robbers into the house.
```

By requiring a subject in the clause, the German construction is less susceptible to ambiguity than English is; consider the sentence, "by leaving the door open, the robbers were able to enter the house," which is lacking an agent for the door being left open, even though such a construction is common in spoken English.

This section must make note of the differences between the words, *als*, *wenn*, and *wann*, all of which can mean "when" in English.

Als refers to a single event or condition in the past, usually expressed using the preterite tense.

```
Als du mich anriefst, war ich noch nicht zu Hause.  (When you called me, I was
not yet home.)
```

Wann is the interrogative word for "when". It's use as a subordinating conjunction is limited to indirect questions and immediate temporal events.

```
Ich weiß nicht, wann er nach Hause kommen wird.
```

Wenn is the most versatile of the three, and has several other meanings beyond its temporal meaning. In the temporal space *wenn* describes, events are less recognized, or focuses on a condition, rather than an event.

Finally, "wenn" has one other principal function. It also means, "if", and is used in conditional and subjunctive statements.

```
Wenn ich einmal reich wär', ... (If i were ever rich...)
```

We will return to syntax later.

80.6.3 Relative Clauses

In many ways, a relative clause is a lengthy description of an item in the main clause. Minimally, a relative clause takes a part of speech from the main clause, known as the

antecedent and uses it in the dependent clause. What connects the two is a *relative pronoun.* As should already be published in this book, the following declension table is provided:

Relative Pronoun - Declension Summary

Case	Masculine	Neuter	Feminine	Plural
Nominative	der	das	die	die
Accusative	den	das	die	die
Dative	dem	dem	der	**denen**
Genitive	**dessen**	**deren**	**dessen**	**deren**

Relative pronouns are similar to the definite article, with the exceptions of the dative plural and the genitive case being marked in bold.

Note that the distinctions between "that" and "which"; and "that" and "who" in English do not exist in German, where everything is described with a standard set of relative pronouns with no regard to how integral the qualities described in the relative clause are to the antecedent.

As relative clauses take one item from the main clause and use it in some way in a dependent clause, it is important to consider how relative pronouns work to avoid confusion. All words in German possess gender, number (singular or plural), and case. The *main clause*, as it relates to the *antecedent*, determines the *gender and number* of the relative pronoun; the *relative clause* determines its *case.*

In order to use relative clauses successfully, it is critical that this point be understood. Gender and number are "inherent" to the antecedent; no grammatical agent could conceivably change those properties. The relative pronoun's case is determined by its role in the relative clause, i.e., how it relates to the other parts of speech in the clause. Consider the following examples, all based on "the man", who is masculine and singular, and apparently not well-liked.

Case of Relative Pronoun	Example
Nominative	Der Mann, *der* nach Hause allein ging, ...
	The man, *who* went home alone, ...
Accusitive	Der Mann, *den* mein Freund während der Hochzeit schlug, ...
	The man, *whom* my friend punched at the wedding, ...
Dative	Der Mann, *dem* meine Mutter kein Weihnachtsgeschenk gegeben hat, ...
	The man, *to whom* my mother didn't give a Christmas present, ...
Genitive	Der Mann, *dessen* Tochter arbeitslos ist, ...
	The man, *whose* daughter is unemployed, ...

In each of these examples, the gender and number of the relative pronoun were determined by the antecedent, while the case of the relative pronoun was determined by its role in the relative clause. Note particularly the genitive example, wherein the relative pronoun, meaning *whose*, modified a feminine noun, without his gender being affected.

Whenever you construct a relative clause, be mindful of this rule. Don't confuse yourself with its complexity, especially regarding the genitive case. As discussed in the chapter on personal pronouns, the word "whose", as well as other possessive pronouns such as "my", "your", and so forth, is a *pronoun* and not an adjective. The pronoun always expresses the characteristics of its antecedent, viz., gender and number.

Relative pronouns offered within prepositional phrases are perfectly acceptable:

```
Der Mann, mit dem meine Mutter wieder gestritten hat, ...
The man, with whom my mother argued again, ...
```

However, if the antecedent is not a person, and the relative pronoun falls within a prepositional phrase, a wo-compound is frequently substituted:

```
Das Flugzeug, worin ich nach Seattle geflogen bin, war fast kaputt.
The airplane, in which I flew to Seattle, was almost broken.
```

Relative clauses almost invariably *follow* the item that they are modifying or the main clause as a whole (with the gender and number of the relative pronoun indicating - to some extent - which potential antecedent it is referring to). Very rarely do they precede the main clause. Exceptions to this come in the form of aphorisms and proverbs:

```
Der (oder Wer) heute abend ruhig einschläft, bekommt morgen Eiskrem und Keks.
(He who goes to bed quietly tonight will get ice-cream and cookies tomorrow
- something a mother might say to her children.)
```

This usage is relatively unimportant.

One final property of relative clauses should be discussed. Relative clauses in some way describe their antecedent. The rules governing attributes in German are considerably more flexible than in English, because the German case system reduces ambiguity. This allows the German speaker to turn a relative clause into an extended attribute, which is essentially a long adjective. Compare the following two sentences, which are equivalent:

```
Der Mann, der jede Woche auf Dienstreise nach Seattle fährt, ist krank.
The man, who drives to Seattle every week on business, is sick.
```

```
Der jede Woche nach Seattle auf Dienstreise fahrende Mann ist krank.
The to-Seattle-every-week-on-business driving man is sick.
```

Such a construction is ludicrious in English, but not-uncommon in German. The experienced reader of German will, with practice, be able to read through such an item without difficulty.

It would be best to review what we have learned about subordinate and relative pronouns before discussing their syntax. Dependent clauses - both subordinating and relative clauses - modify or in some other way describe the antecedent clause upon which they are based. Subordinating clauses provide a variety of ways in which new information can relate to

the main clause, many of which are adverbial in nature (e.g., "weil/because", but not "dass/that", which, in the examples above, replaced the accusitive object). Relative clauses modify and describe entities already mentioned in the main clause. Generally speaking, only subordinate clauses have the ability to occupy the first position in a main clause.

Format:

```
Main clause, subordinating conjunction + subordinate clause.
Subordinating conjunction + subordinate clause, conjugated verb + main clause.
```

```
Main clause including antecedent, relative pronoun based on antecedent +
relative clause.
```

80.6.4 Syntax of Dependent Clauses

Subordinate and relative clauses have similar syntax. Indeed, neglecting the verbs, they have a syntax similar to main clauses. Recall the syntax described at the beginning of this chapter. That syntax will form the basis of the Mittelfeld in dependent clauses.

Syntax of Dependent Clauses

Field	Items	Examples
Comma	All dependent clauses are set off with a comma unless occupying the first position of a main clause	,
Conjunc-tion	For subordinate clauses, this is the *subordinating conjunction.* For relative clauses, this is the *relative pronoun.*	"dass", "weil", "obwohl", "de-nen"
Mittelfeld	The Mittelfeld of a dependent clause follows the same syntax as the Mittelfeld of the main clause.	
	Nominative Pronoun	"ich", "wir"
	Reflexive Pronoun	"mich", "uns"
	Accusative Pronoun	**A** "dich"
	Dative Pronoun	**D** "dir", "mir"
	Nominative Noun	"die Katze"
	Dative Noun	**D** "meiner Mutter"
	Accusitive Noun	**A = ADDA** "meinen Vater"
	Prepositional Phrases	Time, Manner, Place
	Adverbs, Predicate Adjectives	Time, Manner, Place
Verbs	Verbs will be dealt with in greater detail below.	They are very complicated.
	Number of Verbs	**Placement of Verbs** (always at end of clause}
	One (conjugated)	At end of Clause
	Two (conjugated - modal/-like or auxiliary; infinitive)	Build inwards. Infinitive, then conjugated verb

Syntax of Dependent Clauses

Field	Items	Examples
	Three	
	Modal/-like is *conjugated*	3.2.1. Build inwards.
	Modal/-like is *not conjugated* (likely the second verb)	Conjugated verb (1); infinitive verb (3); modal verb (2)

Once again, no dependent clause will contain each of these elements. But understanding the position of pronouns is critical. The same conventions listed under the main clause schema apply.

Verbs in Dependent Clauses

The way the verbs are arranged depends on the number of verbs in the verb-phrase, and the presence of a modal verb.

Dependent Clauses with One Verb

This is the simplest case. Such a clause has one verb, conjugated based on the person and number of the subject of the sentence. This conjugated verb is placed at the end of the clause.

Subordinate Clause	Du weißt, dass ich dich *liebe.* (You know that I love you.)
Relative Clause	Er ist ein Mann, der oft Berlin *besucht.* (He is a man who often visits Berlin.)

Dependent Clauses with Two Verbs

A clause with two verbs has one conjugated verb and one verb in the infinitive. Such examples are clauses in a perfect tense (wherein the conjugated verb is the auxiliary verb, either "haben" or "sein"), the future tense ("werden"), ones with modal verbs, and ones with modal-like verbs (sehen, hören, helfen, lassen).

In a main clause, the conjugated verb will be in the second position, and the infinitive verb will be at the end of the clause.

In a dependent clause, both verbs will be at the end of the clause, with the conjugated verb *last.* This supports the principle of "building inwards".

Subordinate Clause	Du weißt, dass ich dich nicht *lieben kann.* (You know that I cannot love you.)
Relative Clause	Er ist ein Mann, der nach seiner absolvierten Prüfung Berlin besuchen wird. (He is a man who will visit Berlin after his graduation exam.)

Dependent Clauses with Three Verbs

Sentences with three verbs typically involve a modal verb, whose presence complicates matters terribly. Let us think of some examples in English.

1) I am not able to help you move your car. - können - helfen - bewegen

2) I will be able to go to the store with you. - werden - können - gehen

3) I have not been able to afford that. (haben + "sich (dat) etw. leisten können" = to be able to afford sth.)

4) I have not been able to reach you over the phone. - haben - können - erreichen

And so on. The problem is, after you've learned how to put your verb at the end of the sentence in a main clause, and after you've learned how to "build inwards" in dependent clauses, and after you've pulled your hair out, night after night, sitting in a cafe in Seattle declining relative pronouns, German grammar throws *yet another* rule at you, this one so pointless and downright counter-productive, and it seems like German grammar is simply making fun of you at this point, that you leap out of your seat, scream "woo hoo!", and then get back to work.

The modal verb (or the modal-like verb) has to be at the end of the verb phrase, regardless of whether it has been conjugated. In cases where it has not, the conjugated verb moves to the beginning of the verb phrase. Let's look at our examples above.

Du weißt, dass...

1) ...ich dir dein Auto nicht *bewegen helfen kann.* This one is straightforward, because the modal verb is the conjugated verb, allowing the clause to follow the "build inwards" principle.

2) ...ich zum Markt mit dir nicht *werde gehen können.* The modal verb must come last. No semantic or logical reason for this.

3) ...ich mir das nicht *habe leisten können.* The modal verb must come last. Note here that the modal verb does not form a past participle when it has main verb to modify.

4) ...ich dich am Telefon nicht *habe erreichen können.* Note the somewhat sensible placement of "nicht".

And so...

Verb-order in Dependent Clauses

Number of Verbs	Placement of Verbs (always at end of clause}
One (conjugated)	At end of Clause
Two (conjugated - modal/-like or auxiliary; infinitive)	Build inwards. Infinitive, then conjugated verb
Three	
Modal/-like is *conjugated*	3.2.1. Build inwards.
Modal/-like is *not conjugated* (likely the second verb)	Conjugated verb (1); infinitive verb (3); modal verb (2)

80.7 Infinitive Clauses

The reader is already familiar with several types of German verbs that require other verbs; these verbs are *modal* verbs (*können, dürfen, wollen,* etc.); *modal-like* verbs (*sehen, hören, helfen, lassen*); *auxilliary* verbs (*sein, haben*), used for the perfect tenses; and *werden*, used

for future and passive constructions. Another verb that can take another verb without forming an infinitive clause is *bleiben* (e.g., *stehenbleiben*, to remain standing). These verbs never form infinitive clauses, and the verbs that are used with them go at the end of the sentence.

Infinitive clauses are another kind of clause found in German, and are equivalent to infinitive clauses in English. Consider the following examples in English:

```
I am here (in order) to help you clean your house.
The car is ready to be driven.
I work to be able to afford my car.
```

Infinitive clauses are formed after verbs that do not regularly take other verbs. They indicate purpose, intent, and meaning of the action in the main clause. As such, infinitive clauses have *no subject*, or no nouns in the nominative case. Here are the above examples in German:

```
Ich bin hier, um dir dein Haus putzen zu helfen.
Das Auto ist bereit, gefahren zu werden.
Ich arbeite, um mir ein Auto leisten zu können.
```

Infinitive clauses are usually found after a main clause, though it is possible for them to occupy the first position of a main clause. They are always set off by a comma.

Of particular interest is the construction, "*um...zu...*"", which corresponds to the English construction, "in order to...". *Um* is placed at the beginning of the clause, after which follows a standard infinitive clause. Whereas "in order" is frequently omitted from English infinitive clauses of this sort, "*um*" is always included such clauses in German.

The Mittelfeld follows the standard syntax of main clauses, though without nominative nouns and pronouns. At any rate, infinitive tend to be rather short.

Verbs (in the infinitive form) always come at the end, immediately preceded by the word *zu*. In the case of separable-prefix verbs, such a verb is written as one word, with the word *zu* between the prefix and the main verb; e.g. *anzuschlagen*, *auszugehen*, *abzunehmen*, and so forth.

The syntax of infinitive clauses can thus be summarized as follows:

Syntax of Infinitive Clauses

Position	Contents	Examples
Introduction	Comma or Capital Letter (beginning of sentence)	"," "Um"
Mittelfeld	Reflexive Pronoun	"mich", "uns"
	Accusative Pronoun	**A** "dich"
	Dative Pronoun	**D** "dir", "mir"
	(Temporal Expressions)	Expressions of time, especially short temporal adverbs, are often placed here.

Syntax of Infinitive Clauses

Position	Contents	Examples
	Dative Noun	**D** "meiner Mutter"
	Accusitive Noun	**A** = **ADDA** "meinen Vater"
	Prepositional Phrases	Time, Manner, Place
	Adverbs, Predicate Adjectives	Time, Manner Place
Infinitive Verb Phrase	**Verbs with no separable prefix**	*zu* + Infinitive; e.g., "*zu gehen*"
	Verbs with separable prefix	prefix-*zu*-infinitive, written as one word; e.g., "*anzufangen*"
End	Either a period to end the sentence, or a comma to introduce the main clause	","; "."

81 Verbs

81.1 Verbs

German verbs can be classified as *weak* or as *strong*. Weak verbs are very regular in their forms, whereas strong verbs change the stem vowel.

Weak:

```
kaufen, kaufte, gekauft
```

Strong:

```
singen, sang, gesungen
```

With its Anglo-Saxon origin, this notion is also present in English.

```
flip, flipped, flipped
sing, sang, sung
```

Some German verbs have weak and strong forms. This may depend on meaning:

```
Der Botschafter wurde nach Berlin gesandt.
Der Süddeutsche Rundfunk sendete ein Konzert aus dem Gasteig.
```

Or on transitive vs. intransitive use:

```
Das Hemd hing auf der Wäscheleine.
Sie hängte das Hemd auf die Wäscheleine.
```

81.2 Strong Verbs

Liste der starken und unregelmässigen Verben

	Infinitiv	Präteritum (Preterite)	Perfekt (Past Participle)
A	**anfangen** begin	**fing an** began	**angefangen** begun

	Infinitiv	Präteritum (Preterite)	Perfekt (Past Participle)
	ankommen arrive	**kam an** arrived	**ist angekommen** arrived
	anrufen call up	**rief an** called up	**angerufen** called up
B	**backen** bake	**backte** baked	**gebacken** baked
	befehlen command	**befahl** commanded	**befohlen** commanded
	beginnen begin	**begann** began	**begonnen** begun
	beißen bite	**biss** bit	**gebissen** bitten
	bekommen get, receive	**bekam** got	**bekommen** gotten
	bergen salvage	**barg** salvaged	**geborgen** salvaged
	bersten burst	**barst** burst	**geborsten** burst
	betrügen deceive	**betrog** deceived	**betrogen** deceived
	biegen bend	**bog** bent	**gebogen** bent
	bieten offer	**bot** offered	**geboten** offered
	binden tie	**band** tied	**gebunden** tied
	bitten request	**bat** requested	**gebeten** requested
	blasen blow	**blies** blew	**geblasen** blown
	bleiben stay	**blieb** stayed	**ist geblieben** stayed
	bleichen bleach	**blich** bleached	**geblichen** bleached
	braten roast	**briet** roasted	**gebraten** roasted
	brechen break	**brach** broke	**gebrochen** broken
	brennen* burn	**brannte** burned	**gebrannt** burned
	bringen* bring	**brachte** brought	**gebracht** brought
C			
D	**denken**** think↓ • A "mixed" verb. Combination of strong + weak verbs.	**dachte** thought	**gedacht** thought
	dreschen thresh	**drosch** threshed	**gedroschen** threshed
	dringen force	**drang** forced	**gedrungen** forced
	dürfen may	**durfte** was allowed	**gedurft**** been allowed↓ • Used with an infinitive. The past participle being the infinitive **dürfen**: **"Wir haben nicht gehen dürfen"**.
E	**empfangen** receive	**empfing** received	**empfangen** received

	Infinitiv	Präteritum (Preterite)	Perfekt (Past Participle)
	empfehlen recommend	**empfahl** recommended	**empfohlen** recommended
	erfinden invent	**erfand** invented	**erfunden** invented
	erlöschen extinguish	**erlosch** extinguished	**erloschen** extinguished
	erschallen echo, sound	**erscholl** sounded	**erschollen** sounded
	erschrecken* scare↓ • Strong (passive) and weak (active) forms: **"Ich habe ihn erschreckt."** (I scared him.) and **"Ich erschrak bei der Explosion."** (I was startled/scared by the explosion.)	**erschrak** scared	**erschrocken** scared
	essen eat	**aß** ate	**gegessen** eaten
F	**fahren** travel	**fuhr** traveled	**ist gefahren** traveled
	fallen fall	**fiel** fell	**ist gefallen** fallen
	fangen catch	**fing** caught	**gefangen** caught
	fechten fence	**focht** fenced	**gefochten** fenced
	finden find	**fand** found	**gefunden** found
	fliegen fly	**flog** flew	**ist geflogen** flown
	fliehen flee	**floh** fled	**ist geflohen** fled
	fließen flow	**floss** flowed	**ist geflossen** flowed
	fressen gorge	**fraß** gorged	**gefressen** gorged

	Infinitiv	Präteritum (Preterite)	Perfekt (Past Participle)
	frieren freeze	**fror** froze	**gefroren*** frozen↓ • **Frieren** takes the helping verb **haben** or **sein**, which depends on its meaning. In most cases ("to be cold") is **"hat gefroren"**. However meaning of "to freeze, turn into ice," turns out to be **"Der Boden/Das Wasser ist steif gefroren."** (The ground/ water has frozen solid.)
	frohlocken rejoice	**frohlockte** rejoiced	**frohlockt** rejoiced
G	**gären** ferment	**gor** fermented	**gegoren** fermented
	gebären bear (child)	**gebar** bore	**geboren** born
	geben give	**gab** gave	**gegeben** given
	gedeihen flourish	**gedieh** flourished	**ist gediehen** flourished
	gefallen be pleasing, like	**gefiel** liked	**gefallen** liked
	gehen go	**ging** went	**ist gegangen** gone
	gelingen succeed	**gelang** succeeded	**ist gelungen** succeeded
	gelten be valid	**galt** was valid	**gegolten** been valid
	genesen recover	**genas** recovered	**genesen** recovered
	genießen enjoy	**genoß** enjoyed	**genossen** enjoyed
	geschehen happen	**geschah** happened	**ist geschehen** happened
	gewinnen win	**gewann** won	**gewonnen** won
	gießen pour	**goß** poured	**gegossen** poured
	gleichen resemble	**glich** resembled	**geglichen** resembled
	gleiten glide, slide	**glitt** glided	**ist geglitten** glided
	glimmen glow, smoulder	**glomm*** glowed	**ist geglommen*** glowed↓ • Also **glimmte** and **hat geglimmt** (weak).
	graben dig	**grub** dug	**gegraben** dug
	greifen grasp	**griff** grasped	**gegriffen** grasped

	Infinitiv	Präteritum (Preterite)	Perfekt (Past Participle)
H	**haben** have	**hatte** had	**gehabt** had
	halten hold	**hielt** held	**gehalten** held
	hängen hang	**hing** hung/hanged*↓ • **Hängen** is weak in transit ("**Er hängte das Bild an die Wand.**") and strong in intransitive nomances ("**Das Bild hing an der Wand.**").	**hauen** hew, hit
	haute* hit	**gehauen** hit	**gehangen** hung/hanged*↓ • Past form **hieb** (strong verb) is used and the meaning becomes "struck (him) with a weapon."
	heben lift	**hob** lifted	**gehoben** lifted
	heißen be called	**hieß** named	**geheißen** named
	helfen help	**half** helped	**geholfen** helped
I			
J			
K	**kennen*** know	**kannte** knew	**gekannt** known • **Kennen** is a "mixed" verb. Combination of strong and weak verbs.
	klingen ring	**klang** rang	**geklungen** rung
	kneifen pinch	**kniff** pinched	**gekniffen** pinched
	kommen come	**kam** came	**ist gekommen** come
	können can	**konnte** could	**gekonnt*** could • **Können** becomes past participle, once added with an infinitive: "**Ich habe nicht gehen können.**"
	kriechen crawl	**kroch** crawled	**ist gekrochen** crawled

	Infinitiv	Präteritum (Preterite)	Perfekt (Past Participle)
L	**laden** load	**lud** loaded	**geladen** loaded
	lassen let, allow	**ließ** let	**gelassen** let
	laufen run	**lief** ran	**ist gelaufen** run
	leiden suffer	**litt** suffered	**gelitten** suffered
	leihen lend	**lieh** lent	**geliehen** lent
	lesen read	**las** read	**gelesen** read
	liegen* lie↓ • **Liegen** (lie, recline, strong) and **(sich) legen** (lay, put, weak) are not the same.	**lag** lay	**gelegen** lain
	lügen lie	**log** lied	**gelogen** lied
M	**mahlen** grind	**mahlte** ground	**gemahlen** ground
	meiden avoid	**mied** avoided	**gemieden** avoided
	messen measure	**maß** measured	**gemessen** measured
	misslingen fail	**misslang** failed	**misslungen** failed
	mögen like	**mochte** liked	**gemocht*** liked↓ • The past participle is **mögen**, when used with a infinitive: **"Sie hat nicht gehen mögen."**
	müssen must	**musste** had to	**gemusst*** had to↓ • The past participle is the infinitive **müssen**, when used under all modals, with an infinitive: **"Wir haben nicht gehen müssen."**
N	**nehmen** take	**nahm** took	**genommen** taken
	nennen name	**nannte** named	**genannt** named
O			
P	**pfeifen** whistle	**pfiff** whistled	**gepfiffen** whistled
	preisen praise	**pries** praised	**gepriesen** praised

	Infinitiv	Präteritum (Preterite)	Perfekt (Past Participle)
Q	**quellen** gush	**quoll*** gushed↓ • Weak form **quellte**.	**ist gequollen*** gushed↓ • Weak form **hat gequellt**.
R	**raten** advise	**riet** advised	**geraten** advised
	reiben rub	**reib** rubbed	**gerieben** rubbed
	reißen tear	**riss** tore	**gerissen** torn
	reiten* ride↓ • The verb **reiten** is only used for riding an animal (e.g., horseback riding); to express "ride" in a transportation sense (bus, train, etc.), **fahren** is used.	**ritt** rode	**ist geritten** ridden
	rennen* run↓ • A "mixed" verb, combining elements of strong and weak verbs.	**rannte** ran	**ist gerannt** run
	riechen smell	**roch** smelled	**gerochen** smelled
	ringen wring	**rang** wrung	**gerungen** wrung
	rinnen flow	**rann** flowed	**ist geronnen** flowed
	rufen call	**rief** called	**gerufen** called
S	**salzen** salt	**salzte** salted	**gesalzen/gesalzt** salted
	saufen drink	**soff** drank	**gesoffen** drunk
	saugen suck	**sog*** sucked	**gesogen*** sucked↓ • The weak forms **saugte** and **hat gesaugt**. mostlty the weak form is used.

	Infinitiv	Präteritum (Preterite)	Perfekt (Past Participle)
	schaffen create; accomplish, make	**schuf*** created→↓ • The strong forms **schuf/hat geschaffen** are used when the meaning is "created" (**"Sie hat schöne Sachen geschaffen."**).	**geschaffen*** created→↓ • To express "accomplished" or "made it," the weak forms **schaffte/hat geschafft** are used: **"Er hat es geschafft (ein Tor zu machen)!"**
	scheiden depart; separate	**schied** separated	**geschieden*** separated↓ • In the sense of "leave" or "depart" **scheiden** takes **sein** as a helping verb: **"Karl ist aus dem Dienst geschieden."**
	scheinen shine	**schien** shone	**geschienen** shone
	scheißen shit	**schiss** shit	**geschissen** shit
	schelten scold	**schalt** scolded	**gescholten** scolded
	schießen shoot	**schoss** shot	**geschossen** shot
	schlafen sleep	**schlief** slept	**geschlafen** slept
	schlagen hit	**schlug** hit	**geschlagen** hit
	schleichen sneak	**schlich** sneaked	**ist geschlichen** sneaked
	schleifen polish	**schliff*** polished	**geschliffen*** polished↓ • Although the strong form is preferred, **schleifte** and **hat geschleift** (weak) are also used.
	schleißen slit	**schliß** slit	**geschlissen** slit
	schließen close,**lock**	**schloss** closed	**geschlossen** closed
	schlingen gulp (down)	**schlang** gulped	**geschlungen** gulped
	schmeißen fling, toss	**schmiss** flung	**geschmissen** flung
	schmelzen melt	**schmolz** melted	**geschmolzen** melted
	schneiden cut	**schnitt** cut	**geschnitten** cut
	schrecken scare	**schrak/schreckte** scared	**geschreckt/geschrocken** scared
	schreiben write	**schrieb** wrote	**geschrieben** written

	Infinitiv	Präteritum (Preterite)	Perfekt (Past Participle)
	schreien scream	**schrie** screamed	**geschrien** screamed
	schreiten step	**schritt** stepped	**ist geschritten** stepped
	schweigen be silent	**schwieg** was silent	**geschwiegen** been silent
	schwellen* swell, rise↓ • There are two forms of **schwellen**: Strong (above) for the sense of "to swell up/fill with wind," and Weak to "fill (something) up with wind/to swell (something) up."	**schwoll** swelled	**ist geschwollen** swollen
	schwimmen swim	**schwamm** swam	**ist geschwommen** swum
	schwinden dwindle	**schwand** dwindled	**ist geschwunden** dwindled
	schwingen swing	**schwang** swung	**geschwungen** swung
	schwören swear	**schwur**/**schwor** swore	**geschworen** sworn
Se	**sehen** see	**sah** saw	**gesehen** seen
	sein be	**war** was	**ist gewesen** been
	senden* send, transmit↓ • In the sense of "transmit" or "broadcast" only the weak forms **sendete** and **hat gesendet** are used. The weak forms may also be used in the sense of "send."	**sandte** sent	**gesandt** sent
	sieden boil	**sott**/**siedete** boiled	**gesotten** boiled
	singen sing	**sang** sang	**gesungen** sung
	sinken sink	**sank** sank	**ist gesunken** sunk

	Infinitiv	Präteritum (Preterite)	Perfekt (Past Participle)
	sitzen* sit↓ • **Sitzen** (sit, strong) and **(sich) setzen** (set, weak) are different!	**saß** sat	**gesessen** sat
	sollen should, ought to	**sollte** should	**gesollt*** should↓ • With an infinitive, the past participle is **sollen**: "Ich habe nicht gehen sollen."
	spalten split	**spaltete** split	**gespalten/gespaltet** split
	speien spew	**spie** spewed	**gespien** spewed
	spinnen spin	**spann** spun	**gesponnen** spun
	sprechen speak	**sprach** spoke	**gesprochen** spoken
	sprießen sprout	**spross** sprouted	**gesprossen** sprouted
	springen jump	**sprang** jumped	**ist gesprungen** jumped
	stechen stab,**sting**	**stach** stung	**gestochen** stung
	stehen stand	**stand** stood	**gestanden*** stood↓ • In some southern German and Austrian dialects, **stehen** takes **sein** as a helping verb: "**Er ist im Eingang gestanden.**"
	stehlen steal	**stahl** stole	**gestohlen** stolen
	steigen climb	**stieg** climbed	**ist gestiegen** climbed
	sterben die	**starb** died	**ist gestorben** died
	stieben fly about	**stob** flew about	**ist gestoben** flown about
	stinken stink	**stank** stank	**gestunken** stunk
	stoßen push,**bump**	**stieß** pushed	**gestoßen** pushed
	streichen strike,**paint**	**strich** struck	**gestrichen** struck
	streiten argue	**stritt** argued	**gestritten** argued
T	**tragen** carry, wear	**trug** wore	**getragen** worn
	treffen meet	**traf** met	**getroffen** met

	Infinitiv	Präteritum (Preterite)	Perfekt (Past Participle)
	treiben move, drive	**trieb** drove	**getrieben*** driven↓ • In the sense of "drift" or "float" **treiben** takes **sein** as a helping verb: **"Das Eis ist** **den Fluss entlang getrieben."**
	triefen drip	**triefte/troff** dripped	**getrieft** dripped
	trinken drink	**trank** drank	**getrunken** drunk
	trügen be deceptive	**trog** was deceptive	**getrogen** been deceptive
	tun do	**tat** did	**getan** done
U	**überwinden** overcome	**überwand** overcame	**überwunden** overcome
V	**verderben** spoil	**verdarb** spoiled	**verdorben** spoiled
	verdrießen annoy	**verdross** annoyed	**verdrossen** annoyed
	vergessen forget	**vergaß** forgot	**vergessen** forgotten
	verlieren lose	**verlor** lost	**verloren** lost
	verschleißen wear (out)	**verschliss** wore (out)	**verschlissen** worn (out)
	verzeihen forgive	**verzieh** forgave	**verziehen** forgiven
W	**wachsen*** grow↓ • In the sense of "to wax" (skis, etc.), **wachsen** is weak: **(wachste and hat gewachst).**	**wuchs** grew	**ist gewachsen** grown
	waschsen wash	**wusch** washed	**gewaschsen** washed
	weben weave	**wob/webte** wove	**gewoben/gewebt** woven
	weichen* yield↓ • In the sense of "to soften" (up), **weichen** is weak: **(weichte** **and hat geweicht).**	**wich** yielded	**ist gewichen** yielded
	weisen indicate	**wies** indicated	**gewiesen** indicated

	Infinitiv	Präteritum (Preterite)	Perfekt (Past Participle)
	wenden turn	**wandte*** turned→↓	**gewandt*** turned→↓ • Also **wendete** and **gewendet** (car, hay, etc.).
	werben recruit	**warb** recruited	**geworben** recruited
	werden become	**wurde** became	**ist geworden*** become↓ • As a helping verb in the passive voice: **worden**, as in **"Ich bin oft gefragt worden."** (I have often been asked.)
	werfen throw	**warf** threw	**geworfen** thrown
	wiegen weigh	**wog/wiegte** weighed	**gewogen/gewiegt** weighed
	winden twist	**wand** twisted	**gewunden** twisted
	wissen* know↓ • **Wissen** is a "mixed" verb, combination of strong and weak verbs	**wusste** knew	**gewusst** known
	wollen want to	**wollte** wanted to	**gewollt*** wanted to↓ • With an infinitive, the past participle is **wollen**: **"Ich habe nicht gehen wollen."**
	wringen wring	**wrang** wrung	**gewrungen** wrung
X			
Y			
Z	**zeihen** accuse	**zieh** accused	**geziehen** accused
	ziehen* pull↓ • Do not confuse with ↑**zeihen.**↑	**zog** pulled	**gezogen** pulled
	zwingen compel	**zwang** compelled	**gezwungen** compelled

81.3 Separable Verbs

Sometimes you will run into verbs such as anrufen, aufräumen, mitkommen. These verbs are examples of Separable Prefix Verbs. When you see these kinds of verbs, it will have a preposition prefix followed by a verb. These verbs separate when they are the main verb of a sentence.

EXAMPLES:

I am calling the butcher. Ich rufe den Metzger an.

I am trying on the boots. Ich probiere die Stiefel an.

81.4 Reflexive Verbs

Reflexive Verbs are verbs involving the reflexive pronoun "sich" and its conjugations that reflect, or refer back, to the performer of the action. There are only accusative and dative reflexive pronouns.

Accusative reflexive pronouns are used when there is no direct object. Dative reflexive pronouns are used when a direct object is present. However, when using a direct object, the possessive is not used.

Examples:

Accusative: *Ich **verletze mich**.* I injure myself.

Dative: *Ich **verletze mir**die Hand.* I injure my hand.

Accusative: *Er hat **sich verbrannt**.* He burned himself.

Dative: *Er hat **sich**den Daumen **verbrannt**.* He burned his thumb.

Reflexiv Pronommen		
	Akkusativ (Wenfall)	**Dativ (Wemfall)**
1st sg.	mich	mir
2nd sg. (informal)	dich	dir
1st pl.	uns	"
2nd pl. (informal)	euch	"
2nd sg. or pl. formal; 3rd.	sich	"

Notice that all reflexives are the same as the Akkusativ and Dativ Pronoun Declensions — *except* for 3rd Person and 2nd sg./pl. Person formal (*man/sie/Sie*), in which case all reflexives are *sich.*

81.5 Modals

81.5.1 Dürfen

Dürfen means to be allowed/permitted, may.

	Present	**Past**	**Conjunctive II**
ich	**darf** (I am allowed to)	**durfte**	**dürfte**
du	**darfst** (You are allowed to)	**durftest**	**dürftest**
er/sie/es	**darf** (He/She/It is allowed to)	**durfte**	**dürfte**
wir	**dürfen** (We are allowed to)	**durften**	**dürften**
ihr	**dürft** (You (plural) are allowed to)	**durftet**	**dürftet**
sie/Sie	**dürfen** (They are allowed to/You (formal) are allowed to)	**durften**	**dürften**

Examples:

> **Darf ich einen Freund zum Fest bringen?** May I bring a friend to the party.
> **Man darf hier nicht rauchen.** One is not allowed to smoke here.
> **Niemand durfte die Stadt verlassen.** No one was allowed to leave the city.

81.5.2 Können

können means 'to be able, capable'. It is cognate with the English word 'can'/'could'.

	Present	**Past**	**Conjunctive II**
ich	**kann** (I can)	**konnte**	**könnte**
du	**kannst** (You can)	**konntest**	**könntest**
er/sie/es	**kann** (He/She/It can)	**konnte**	**könnte**
wir	**können** (We can)	**konnten**	**könnten**
ihr	**könnt** (You can)	**konntet**	**könntet**
sie/Sie	**können** (They can)	**konnten**	**könnten**

Examples:

> **Ich kann das nicht tun.** I can't do it.
> **Wir konnten sie nicht erreichen.** We could not reach them.

81.5.3 Mögen

mögen expresses a pleasure, or desire. In the present tense, it is used transitively with people or food. e.g. 'Ich mag dich' 'I like you' or 'Ich mag Erdbeeren' 'I like strawberries'. The subjunctive (of the past) expresses preference to perform the action of a subordinate clause

'Ich möchte nach Frankreich reisen' *I would like to travel to France'. 'mögen' is cognate with the English verb 'may'/'might'.*

	Present	**Past**	**Conjunctive II**
ich	**mag** (I would like to)	**mochte**	**möchte** (I would like to)
du	**magst** (You like to)	**mochtest**	**möchtest** (You would like to)
er/sie/es	**mag** (He/She/It likes to)	**mochte**	**möchte** (He/She/It would like to)
wir	**mögen** (We like to)	**mochten**	**möchten** (We would like to)
ihr	**mögt** (You like to)	**mochtet**	**möchtet** (You would like to)
sie/Sie	**mögen** (They like to)	**mochten**	**möchten** (They would like to)

Example:

> **Ich möchte nach Deutschland reisen.** I would like to travel to Germany.

(There is also a present subjunctive *möge*, which is very formal:

Der König sagte: "Er möge eintreten." - The king said: "He may enter.")

81.5.4 Müssen

müssen expresses something forced on you. It is etymologically related to 'must'.

	Present	**Past**	**Conjunctive II**
ich	**muss** gehen (I must/have to go)	**musste** (I had to)	**müsste**
du	**musst**	**musstest**	**müsstest**
er/sie/es	**muss**	**musste**	**müsste**
wir	**müssen**	**mussten**	**müssten**
ihr	**müsst**	**musstet**	**müsstet**
sie/Sie	**müssen**	**mussten**	**müssten**

Examples:

> **Ich muss nicht** arbeiten. ˜ Ich **brauche nicht zu** arbeiten. I **don't have to** work.
> Ich **darf nicht** arbeiten. I **must not** work.

Note that the negative **nicht müssen** is not the English **must not**, but rather **need not** or **don't have/need to**. **must not** translates to **nicht dürfen**.

There are however some northern German uses like:

> Du **musst** das **nicht** tun meaning Du **solltest** das **nicht** tun.

81.5.5 Sollen

sollen expresses an obligation or duty. It is etymologically related to 'shall'.

	Present	**Past**
ich	**soll** schwimmen (I am to swim)	**sollte** (I was to)
du	**sollst**	**solltest**
er/sie/es	**soll**	**sollte**
wir	**sollen**	**sollten**
ihr	**sollt**	**solltet**
sie/Sie	**sollen**	**sollten**

81.5.6 Wollen

wollen means to want.

	Present	**Past**
ich	**will** rennen (I want to run)	**wollte**
du	**willst**	**wolltest**
er/sie/es	**will**	**wollte**
wir	**wollen**	**wollten**
ihr	**wollt**	**wolltet**
sie/Sie	**wollen**	**wollten**

81.5.7 Use in Perfect (and Pluperfect) Tense

Although all these modals have a normal perfect:

> **gedurft gekonnt gemocht gemusst gesollt**

in connection with other verbs, the infinitive form is used:

> Ich habe das tun **dürfen - können - mögen - müssen - sollen**.

Wrong:

> Ich habe das tun **gedurft - gekonnt - gemocht - gemusst - gesollt**.

It holds also for the verbs **sehen** and **hören**:

```
Ich habe ihn kommen sehen - hören.
```

81.5.8 Use of modal verbs as full verbs

Modal verbs can be used as full verbs indicating motion.

Er muss nach Berlin He must go to Berlin.

81.6 Present Tense

81.6.1 Use

The Present Tense is used for..

- The Present Tense (="das Präsens") is used to describe situations that are happening and aren't the past.

- For Ongoing Action, like *I'm swimming in the pool now*

- Everyday Truths, like *The moon and stars will come at night.*

- Future meaning, if explicitly stated, like *I will run tomorrow morning*

- Actions started in the past and still going on in the present *I've been cleaning the house all day*

81.6.2 Progressive Forms

There is a present progressive tense in colloquial spoken German. Its use is optional.

Here is one example:

Ich bin am Fahren. (I am at the driving) I'm driving.

The person to say this would be driving during the time they say this and they would continue to drive after stating this for some time.

You nominalize the verb ("fahren" (driving) becomes "das Fahren") and add a "am". You can also do this with forms of the past.

Als er kam war ich gerade am Abwaschen. (When he arrived i was at "the dishwashing") I was washing the dishes when he arrived.

So the verb "sein" (to be) includes the information what tense he was doing what he did in.

Here the progressive meaning is also emphasized with the word "gerade" meaning something like: I was JUST ABOUT to wash the dishes(not the same though because it means he is already doing it and not about to start).

81.7 Perfect Tense

The **Perfect Tense** or **das Perfekt** of verbs is used to talk about things in the past which have already happened. It is sometimes referred to as "Present Perfect Tense". This can cause confusion. While the formation is similar, the meaning and usage differs.

81.7.1 Formation

As in English, the perfect tense consists of two parts. An auxiliary (Hilfsverb) and a past participle (Partizip Perfekt). Compare the examples given below with their English translations.

Er	hat	gelacht.
He	*has*	*laughed.*

Sie	ist	gekommen
She	*has*	*come.*

Die Kinder	haben	gegessen.
The children	*have*	*eaten.*

81.7.2 Past participle for regular verbs

The **general rule** is simple:

verb	prefix	+ 3rd-person sing.	participle(er/sie/es)
lachen (laugh)	ge	+ (er/sie/es) lacht	gelacht
kaufen (buy)	ge	+ (er/sie/es) kauft	gekauft
mähen (mow)	ge	+ (er/sie/es) mäht	gemäht

There are some groups of regular verbs that slightly differ from that pattern.

Some verbs **drop the prefix ge-**. Like the other regular verbs they end in -t. These are:

1. Verbs with *unseparable prefixes* (be-, ent-, er-, empf-, ge-, ver-, miss-, zer-)

Examples:

verb	past participle
besuchen (visit)	besucht

verb	past participle
entfernen (remove)	entfernt
erreichen (achieve)	erreicht
gehören (belong)	gehört
verstecken (hide)	versteckt
missverstehen (misunderstand)	missverstanden

2. Verbs *ending in -ieren*
Examples:

verb	past participle
kopieren (copy)	kopiert
polieren (polish)	poliert

3. Another group is formed by **verbs with separable prefixes**
With separable verbs, the prefix ge is placed between the prefix and the rest of the verb.

Examples:

verb	sep. pref.+ ge + 3rd-person sg.	= past participle
aufmachen (open)	auf + ge + macht	= aufgemacht
abstellen (put down)	ab + ge + stellt	= abgestellt

Separable and **inseparable** verbs are distinguished by the **stressed syllable**:

verb	past participle
über'setzen (to translate)	über'setzt
'übersetzen (to ferry across)	'übergesetzt

```
Er hat das Buch ins Chinesische übersetzt.
Der Fährmann hat den Passagier übergesetzt (über den Fluss gesetzt).
```

81.7.3 Past Participle for Irregular Verbs

Irregular verbs always end in **-en**. The **vowel can be different** from the one in present tense. Look at some examples:

infinitive	3rd-person sg.	past participle
gehen (go)	geht	gegangen
essen (eat)	isst	gegessen
schreiben (write)	schreibt	geschrieben
trinken (drink)	trinkt	getrunken
schlafen (sleep)	schläft	geschlafen
nehmen (take)	nimmt	genommen

You have to learn these forms by heart. How you can obtain the necessary information and how you should learn them is described in *section tips for learning* below.

Note that irregular verbs can be combined with the same prefixes as described above. The same rules regarding the prefix *ge-* apply. Therefore the forms for *schreiben*, *verschreiben* and *aufschreiben* are *geschrieben*, *verschrieben* and *aufgeschrieben* respectively.

Which verbs are irregular

A lot of verbs that are irregular in English are irregular in German, too. Unfortunately, this is not always true. It is most likely when the German and the English verb are related (i.e. look similar).

Examples:

```
see:   irregular   sehen:    irregular
buy:   irregular   kaufen:   regular
get:   irregular   bekommen: irregular ;-)
```

Regular verbs are much more frequent than irregular ones, but a lot of the irregular verbs are used very frequently, for instance haben, sein, gehen, kommen etc.

When in doubt whether a verb is irregular or not, it is best to look it up in a dictionary (See below).

81.7.4 *Haben* or *sein* as auxiliaries

Whether a verb is irregular or not **does not influence the choice of auxiliary.**

Most verbs take *haben* as auxiliary.

A) Verbs which take an **accusative object** (transitive verbs)

B) **Reflexive verbs** always take **haben** as auxiliary.

Examples A:

```
trinken: Er hat ein Bier getrunken.
lesen:   Sie hat ein Buch gelesen
kochen   Sie haben gestern Spaghetti gekocht.
```

Examples B:

```
sich freuen   Ich habe mich gefreut
sich kämmen   Er hat sich gekämmt
sich ärgern   Wir haben uns schon lange nicht mehr so geärgert.
```

The **auxiliary sein** is taken by verbs that describe

C) the relocation from one place to another or

D) the change of a state

and with

E) **sein** (be) and **bleiben** (stay)

Note: none of the verbs from groups C-E is combined with an accusative object.

Examples C: relocation verbs

```
verb             aux.  irregular  sentence with perfect tense
kommen (come)    sein  yes        Ich bin gekommen.
reisen (travel)  sein  no         Wir sind schon dreimal nach China gereist.
fahren (drive)   sein  yes        Ich bin mit dem Auto nach Kalifornien
gefahren.
begegnen (meet)  sein  no         Er ist ihm gestern begegnet.
gehen (go)       sein  yes        Du bist gegangen.
starten (take off) sein yes       Das Flugzeug ist gestartet.
```

In southern German (mostly Bavarian) use, also stehen, sitzen und schwimmen are treated like a (non-)movement:

```
Ich bin gestanden - gesessen - geschwommen. High German is: Ich habe gestanden
- gesessen - geschwommen.
Aber: Ich habe den See durchschwommen.
```

Examples D: change of state verbs

```
verb                    aux.  irr.   sentence with perfect tense
aufstehen (get up)      sein  yes    Ich bin heute früh aufgestanden.
einschlafen (fall asleep) sein yes   Die Kinder sind endlich
eingeschlafen.
verblühen (whither)     sein  no     Die Blumen sind schon verblüht
```

Examples E: sein and bleiben

```
Er ist nicht lange geblieben.  He didn't stay long.
Er ist immer nett gewesen.     He has always been nice.
```

Exceptions to the rules Some of the verbs from group A can be used with an object in accusative case. In this case, they take **haben** as auxiliary.

Compare:

```
Ich bin nach Kalifornien gefahren.            I drove to California.
Ich bin mit dem Auto nach Kalifornien gefahren.   I drove to California by
car (literally: with the car)
Ich habe das Auto (Akk.) nach Kalifornien gefahren. I drove the car to
California.
```

The same applies to fliegen (fly), starten and reiten (ride a horse).

81.7.5 Usage

Unlike in English the difference in meaning between Perfekt and Präteritum is rather small. The main difference between those two forms lies in usage. Perfekt is mostly used in spoken language, while Präteritum is mostly reserved for written texts. However, the *modals*, the verbs *haben* and *sein* and the expression *es gibt* are almost exclusively used in Präteritum - even when speaking. One reason might be the frequency of those verbs, the other reason is most likely the very complex perfect forms for modals.

(This is in southern German use; in northern German, you'll hear the preterite also in spoken language.)

On the other hand, the perfect tense is used in writing too. The more oral the text is, the more perfect tense you will find (for example in personal letters etc.). If an action has happened very recently, it tends to be in perfect tense too.

Look at the following conversation and concentrate on the distribution of Präteritum and Perfekt.

(1) Anna: Hallo Peter. Wo warst du denn? Ich habe dich schon lange nicht mehr gesehen.

(2) Peter: Hallo Anna. Ich war die letzten zwei Wochen im Urlaub.

(3) Anna: So? Wo warst du denn genau?

(4) Peter: Auf der Insel Elba, in einem fantastischen Hotel. Es gab jeden Abend ein Büffet und man konnte essen, so viel man wollte!

(5) Anna (lacht): Ich glaube dir sofort, dass dir das gefallen hat. Du hast aber nicht nur gegessen, oder? Was hast du denn den ganzen Tag gemacht?

(6) Peter (lacht auch): Nein, natürlich nicht. Ich bin viel geschwommen, ich habe mir die Insel angeguckt und am Abend bin ich immer zum Tanzen in eine Disco gegangen.

(7) Anna: Aha... Und? Hast du jemanden kennen gelernt?

(8) Peter (grinst): Kein Kommentar.

Vocablary to help you understand the text:

```
der Urlaub, -e    vacation
genau             exactly, precisely
die Insel, -n     island
das Büffet, -s    buffet
gefallen          like
angucken          to look at (colloquial)
```

```
    kennen lernen      get to know
    grinsen            grin
```

Used forms to talk about past events

```
    Präteritum         Perfekt
    du warst (1/3)     habe gesehen (1)
    ich war (2)        es hat gefallen (5)
    es gab (4)         du hast gegessen (5)
    konnte (4)         du hast gemacht (5)
    wollte (4)         ich bin geschwommen (6)
                       ich habe angeguckt (6)
                       ich bin gegangen (6)
                       du hast kennen gelernt
```

81.7.6 How to find the forms in a dictionary

Unless you have a special dictionary for learners, not all the forms will be spelled out. Regular forms are often omitted. The same goes for the auxiliary *haben*. If no forms are indicated, you may assume that the verb is regular and has the verb haben as an auxiliary. However, if you find the abbreviation *itr* or *i.* (for intransitive) behind the verb, the auxiliary is often **sein**. Intransitve verbs don't have an accusative object and these are often used with sein, while *transitive* verbs (tr. or t.) are **always** conjugated with haben.

Sometimes not even the forms of irregular verbs are given in the lexicon entry. Irregular verbs are often indicated by *irr.* for irregular or a similar abbreviation. In that case, look for a list of irregular verb forms in the index of your dictionary.

To find the past participle of separable verbs you often have to cut the prefix and look for the base form of the verb. If you look for *aufstehen* (get up), you probably find your answer in the entry of stehen. **Remember**: The prefix ge goes in between the prefix of the separable verb and the verb itself: auf + ge + standen.

When working online, you might consider using Canoo[1]. Enter an arbitrary form of the word you are interested in into the mask. Hit enter. On the results page, choose the link *Flexion* behind the appropriate entry (or *inflection* in the English version). You will get a table of all possible verb forms.

81.7.7 Tips for learning

Irregular forms are just that - irregular. Therefore you have to learn them by heart. By learning four forms, you can construct every verb form for a given verb.

The forms you should know are:

---

1   http://www.canoo.net

```
Infinitiv      Präsens        Präteritum     Hilfsverb + Partizip Perfekt
infinitiv      3rd person     preterite      auxiliary + past participle
gehen          geht           ging           ist       + gegangen
nehmen         nimmt          nahm           hat       + genommen
fahren         fährt          fuhr           ist       + gefahren
lesen          liest          las            hat       + gelesen
essen          isst           aß             hat       + gegessen
kommen         kommt          kam            ist       + gekommen
bleiben        bleibt         blieb          ist       + geblieben
sein           ist            war            ist       + gewesen
anfangen       fängt ... an   fing ... an    hat       + angefangen
...
```

All forms - besides the infinitive of course - should be in **3rd-person singular**.

A good way to learn those forms is to put them on small cards. On one side you write the infinitive and probably a sentence to illustrate the usage of the verb. On the backside you put the rest of the forms and - if needed - a translation of the verb. When learning, you look at the infinitve and try to remember the forms and the meaning. You can easily verify your hypothesis by flipping the card.

If you encounter a verb you want to learn, look it up in a dictionary. If it is irregular, learn the verb together with its defining forms. Like that, you spare yourself a lot of trouble later on.

81.8 Sentence Structure

The perfect tense consists of two verb forms: an auxiliary and a past participle. Together they form the so called predicate. The predicate consists of all verb parts in one clause.

The sentence structure in perfect behaves as with every two parts predicate (modals plus infinitive, separable verbs etc.)

81.8.1 Main Clauses

In a main clause (Hauptsatz), the conjugated verb (the auxiliary in this case) is in the second position and the past participle stands at the end of the clause.

```
   First Position (I)       (II)
1) Sein Vater               hat  gestern ein fantastisches Essen gekocht.
2) Gestern                  hat  sein Vater ein fantastisches Essen gekocht.
   Both: Yesterday, his father cooked a fantastic meal.
3) Ein fantastisches Essen  hat  sein Vater gestern gekocht.*
   It was a fantastic meal that his father cooked yesterday.
```

* The third example is correct, although not very frequent. You might use it if you want to stress what exactly his father has prepared or if you have to repeat the sentence because your partner has not understood this particular part of it.

Second position does not equal *second word*, as you can see above. However, there is only one group of words allowed before the conjugated verb (the auxiliary in this case). Such

groups of words are called "phrases". While you can put very long phrases in front of the conjugated verb, you must not use two. Therefore the sentence "Gestern sein Vater hat ein fantastisches Essen gekocht" is wrong.

81.8.2 Subordinated Clauses

Subordinated clauses begin with a *subordinating conjunction*. Well known conjunctions of this kind are

```
   weil  dass  wenn.
```

*In spoken language *weil* is often used like *und* or *aber*, which means that it is followed by a main clause. However, after *weil*, speakers often pause for a little while. There is no pause after either *und* or *aber*.

Weil + main clause is not allowed in written language. Therefore you may say: *Ich gehe, weil - (little pause) - ich bin müde.* But you wouldn't use it in a letter. At least not yet.

The correct conjunction for a main clause is *denn*, which is rarely used in spoken language.

In subordinated clauses the conjugated verb, i.e. the auxiliary, stands at the very end of the sentence. The past participle stands directly in front of it. For example:

```
                   conj.    aux.                   participle  aux.
   Ich weiß,        dass du        das             gemacht    hast.
   Ich glaube dir,  weil du        bisher noch nie gelogen    hast.
   Ich glaube dir,  denn du hast bisher noch nie gelogen.
   Ich gehe,        wenn du                        gegangen   bist.
```

81.9 Past tense

81.9.1 Regular verbs

Regular (or better, weak) verbs take the ending -te. The person endings are added afterwards. Note that the forms for 1st- and 3rd-person singular are the same.

	lernen
ich	lern**te**
du	lern**test**
er/sie/es	lern**te**
wir	lern**ten**
ihr	lern**tet**
sie/Sie	lern**ten**

If the stem of a verb (infinitive minus -en) ends in -t (arbeit-en), -d (end-en) or consonant plus m or n (öffn-en, rechn-en) you add an -e before the preterite endings.

	arbeiten
ich	arbeit**ete**
du	arbeit**etest**
er/sie/es	arbeit**ete**
wir	arbeit**eten**
ihr	arbeit**etet**
sie/Sie	arbeit**eten**

81.9.2 Irregular verbs

Without -te

The strong verbs belong to this group. The endings are easy to memorize. It is harder to know which vowel to use. The rule mentioned above for t/d, double-consonant + n/m applies also for irregular verbs.

	fahren	**stehen**
ich	fuhr	stand
du	fuhr**st**	stand**(e)st**
er/sie/es	fuhr	stand
wir	fuhr**en**	stand**en**
ihr	fuhr**t**	stand**et**
sie/Sie	fuhr**en**	stand**en**

```
gehen, ging, gegangen
stehen, stand, gestanden
```

With -te

Few irregular verbs take the -te ending. Examples are: nennen, rennen, kennen, bringen, denken and the irregular modals (können, dürfen and müssen).

	nennen
ich	nann**te**
du	nann**test**
er/sie/es	nann**te**
wir	nann**ten**
ihr	nann**tet**
sie/Sie	nann**ten**

81.10 Future Tense

81.10.1 Talking about future with the present tense

German uses the Present Tense to talk about the future whenever it is clear to both speaker and listener that the future is meant. In the dialogue example:

> Wenn du zu Hause bleibst, kommen wir dich besuchen.
> *If you stay at home, we shall come and visit you.*

The whole conversation is about the future, so there is no need to indicate it again in the tense of the verb.

Some more examples:

> Ich schreibe den Brief heute Abend.
> *I will write the letter this evening.*
>
> Wir gehen nächstes Jahr nach Spanien.
> *We will go to Spain next year.*

81.10.2 Futur I

Where the meaning would not otherwise be clear, and in more formal language, e.g. to express an intention, German talks about the future tense by using **werden** plus the infinitive at the end of the clause. The forms of **werden** are:

> ich **werde**
> du **wirst**
> er/sie/es/man **wird**
>
> wir **werden**
> ihr **werdet**
> sie/Sie **werden**

Examples:

> Ich **werde** ein Haus **bauen**.
> *I shall build a house.* (an intention)
>
> Wir **werden sehen**.
> *We will see.*

The future can also express some inescapable fate:

> Sie **werden** alle **umkommen**.
> *They will all perish.*

81.10.3 Future II

The Future II is formed with added "sein" oder "haben" and expresses that one action will happen before another one.

> Wenn sie das Abendessen gekocht **haben** wird, werden sie kommen.
> When she will have cooked the dinner, they will come.

In the colloquial language, the perfect is often used for that.

In the colloquial language expresses the Future II often a speculation about the past.

> Sie werden angekommen **sein**.
> literally "they will have arrived" - meaning "(I gather) they have arrived (by now)"

> Sie werden es gemacht **haben**.
> "they will have done it"

In the colloquial language, the *Futur II* is normally used when speaking about something that should have happened already, but you are not sure or you can't prove it.

----

82 APPENDICES

83 Contents

---

84 A.01 - Das Alphabet

1. REDIRECT German/Grammar/Alphabet and Pronunciation[1]

---

1   http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/German%2FGrammar%2FAlphabet%20and%20Pronunciation

85 A.02 - Phrase Book

85.1 German Phrases

85.1.1 Greetings

Hallo!	Hello!
Guten Tag!	Good day!
Tag	Day
Guten Morgen!	Good morning!
Guten Abend!	Good evening- this is for close friends and family

Wie geht es Ihnen? How are you (formal)? How are you doing?

Wie geht's	How are you (informal)
Es geht mir gut	I'm doing fine, I'm well
Prima!,	Great!
Spitze!	Super!
Gut!	Good!
Sehr gut!	Very good!
Toll!	Terrific!
Ganz gut	Pretty good
So lala	OK
Es geht so	Going ok
Nicht gut	Not well
Schlecht	Bad
Sehr schlecht	Very bad
Miserabel	Miserable
Und Ihnen?	And you (formal)?

Auf Wiedersehen!	Good bye!
Wiedersehen!	Bye!
Tschüss!	See you!
Ciao!	Ciao! (Italian for 'see you')
Bis später!	Later! (until later)
Bis dann!	Later! (until whenever)
Wiederhören	(hear) again (used over the phone)

Note: *How are you?* is not a typical query in German greeting etiquette as it is in English, where the standard answer is *I'm Fine*. A German speaker will consider this to be an earnest question, and you may receive an honest answer that is longer than you expected.

Note: *Wiedersehen* directly translates as "to see again".

85.1.2 Gespräche (conversations)

```
Danke (sehr)!          Thanks, thank you
Danke schön!           Thanks a lot!
Bitte?                 Please?
Bitte (sehr)!          You're welcome! (comes after danke)
Entschuldigung!        Excuse me!
Vielen Dank            Much thanks
Gern geschehen         You are welcome
```

85.1.3 Verstehen (understanding)

```
Sprechen Sie bitte etwas langsamer.       Please, speak somewhat slower.
Bitte sprechen Sie langsamer.             Please speak more slowly.
Können Sie mich verstehen?                Can you understand me?
Ich verstehe Sie nicht.                   I don't understand you.
Ich weiß nicht.                           I don't know
Was haben Sie gesagt?                     What was that? What have you said?
Können Sie das bitte wiederholen?         Can you say that again, please!
Ich spreche kein deutsch.                 I don't speak German (literally: I
speak no German)
Ich spreche nur ein bisschen deutsch.     I speak only a little German
Ich spreche nur wenig deutsch.            I speak a little German
Ich spreche nur ein paar Wörter auf deutsch. I only speak a few words of
German.
Sprechen Sie deutsch?                     Do you speak German?
Sprechen Sie englisch?                    Do you speak English?
```

85.2 Positionen (Locations)

```
Wo ist die Apotheke?              Where is the drug store?
Wo ist das Geschäft?              Where is the shop?
Wissen Sie, wo der Flughafen ist? Do you know where the airport is?
Wie gelangt man zur Bowlingbahn?  How do you get to the bowling alley?
```

More commonly used is: (few people say "gelangt")

```
Wie kommt man zur…                How does one get to…? (for feminine
words)
Wie kommt man zur Apotheke?       How does one get to the chemist /
pharmacy?

Wie kommt man zum…                How does one get to…? (for neuter or
masculine words)
Wie kommt man zum Flughafen?      How does one get to the airport?
```

```
Gehen Sie nach links.             Go left
Gehen Sie nach rechts.            Go right
```

85.3 Common phrases

Translation	Phrase	IPA	Pronunciation	Sound
Translation	Phrase	IPA	Pronunciation	Sound
German	*Deutsch*	/dɔɪtʃ/	(doytsh)	(listen[1])
hello	*Hallo*	/ˈhaloː/	(HAH-loh)	(listen[2])
good-bye	*auf Wiedersehen*	/aʊf ˈviːdɐzeːn/	(owf VEE-der-zayn)	(listen[3])
please	*bitte*	/ˈbɪtə/	(BIT-tuh)	(listen[4])
you're welcome	*bitte schön*	/ˈbɪtə ʃøːn/	(BIT-tuh shurn)	
thank you	*danke*	/ˈdaŋkə/	(DAHNG-kuh)	(listen[5])
that one	*das da*	/das da/	(duss dah)	(listen[6])
how much?	*wie viel?*	/vi fiːl/	(vee feel)	(listen[7])
English	*Englisch*	/ˈʔɛŋlɪʃ/	(ANG-lish)	(listen[8])
yes	*ja*	/jaː/	(yah)	(listen[9])
no	*nein*	/naɪn/	(nine)	(listen[10])
I need help	*Ich brauche Hilfe*	/ʔɪç ˈbʁaʊχə ˈhɪlfə/	(ish BROW-khuh HEEL-fuh)	
excuse me	*Entschuldigen Sie*	/ʔɛntˈʃʊldɪgən ziː/	(ent-SHOOL-dee-gen zee)	
pardon me	*verzeihen Sie*	/fɐˈtsaɪən ziː/	(fair-TSEYE-en zee)	
I am sick	*ich bin krank*	/ʔɪç bɪn kʁaŋk/	(ish bin krunk)	
where's the bathroom?	*Wo ist die Toilette?*	/voː ʔɪst diː toːˈlɛtə/	(vo ist dee toe-LET-tuh)	(listen[11])
generic toast	*prosit*	/ˈpʁoziːt/	(PRO-zeet)	(listen[12])
	prost	/pʁoːst/	(proast)	(listen[13])
Do you speak English?	*Sprechen Sie Englisch?*	/ˈʃpʁɛçən ziː ʔɛŋlɪʃ/	(SHPRE-shen zee ANG-lish)	(listen[14])
I don't speak German	*Ich spreche kein Deutsch*	/ʔɪç ˈʃpreçə kaɪn dɔɪtʃ/	(ish SHPRE-shuh kine doytsh)	
I don't understand	*Ich verstehe nicht.*	/ʔɪç fɐˈʃteːə nɪçt/	(ish fair-SHTAY-uh nisht)	(listen[15])
Sorry	*Entschuldigung*	/ʔɛntˈʃʊldɪgʊŋ/	(ent-SHOOL-dee-gung)	(listen[16])
I don't know	*Ich weiß nicht*	/ʔɪç vaɪs nɪçt/	(ish vice nisht)	
Happy birthday	*Herzlichen Glückwunsch zum Geburtstag*	/ˈhɛʁtslɪçən ˈglʏkvʊnʃ tsʊm gəˈbuʁtstaːk/	(HAIRTS-lee-shen GLUKE-voonsh tsoom ge-BOORTS-tahk)	(listen[17])

1   http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/Media%3ACPIDL%20German%20-%20Deutsch.ogg
2   http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/Media%3ACPIDL%20German%20-%20Hallo.ogg
3   http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/Media%3ACPIDL%20German%20-%20Auf%20Wiedersehen.ogg
4   http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/Media%3ADe-bitte-2.ogg
5   http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/Media%3ACPIDL%20German%20-%20Danke.ogg
6   http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/Media%3ACPIDL%20German%20-%20Das.ogg
7   http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/Media%3ACPIDL%20German%20-%20Wie%20viel.ogg
8   http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/Media%3ACPIDL%20German%20-%20Englisch.ogg
9   http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/Media%3ACPIDL%20German%20-%20Ja.ogg
10   http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/Media%3ACPIDL%20German%20-%20Nein.ogg
11   http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/Media%3ACPIDL%20German%20-%20Wo%20ist%20die%20Toilette.ogg
12   http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/Media%3ACPIDL%20German%20-%20Prosit.ogg
13   http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/Media%3ACPIDL%20German%20-%20Prost.ogg
14   http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/Media%3ACPIDL%20German%20-%20Sprechen%20Sie%20Englisch.ogg
15   http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/Media%3ACPIDL%20German%20-%20Ich%20verstehe%20nicht.ogg
16   http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/Media%3ACPIDL%20German%20-%20Entschuldigung.ogg
17   http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/Media%3AHerzlichen%20Gl%C3%BCckwunsch%20zum%20Geburtstag.ogg

86 A.03 - Grammar Reference Table I

Beginning German[1] | Basic German[2] | Intermediate German[3] ----

86.1 *Der*-word Case for German Nouns

	Case			
Gender	**Nominativ**	**Genitiv**	**Dativ**	**Akkusativ**
masculine	*der*	*des*	*dem*	*den*
feminine	*die*	*der*	*der*	*die*
neuter	*das*	*des*	*dem*	*das*
plural*	*die*	*der*	*den*	*die*

* The same regardless of singular noun gender

86.2 Personal Pronoun Tables: nominative, genitive, dative & accusative cases

86.2.1 Nominative case personal pronouns

The **nominative case** is used as the subject of a verb.

	Singular		Plural	
1st person	**ich**	I	**wir**	we
2nd person	**du (Sie*)**	you	**ihr (Sie*)**	you
3rd person	**er, sie, es**	he, she, it	**sie**	they

***Polite** form. ----

---

1   http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/German%2FLevel%20I
2   http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/German%2FLevel%20II
3   http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/German%2FLevel%20III

86.2.2 Genitive case personal pronouns

The **genitive** case corresponds to the **possessive** case in English or to the English objective case preceded by 'of' and denoting possession. The use of genitive personal pronouns is very rare in German and many Germans are unable to use them correctly.

	Singular		Plural	
1st person	**meiner**	my	**unser**	our
2nd person	**deiner** (**Ihrer***)	your	**eurer** (**Ihrer***)	your
3rd person	**seiner**, **ihrer**,	his, her,	**ihrer**	their
	seiner	its		

***Polite** form.

Examples:

*Ich erbarme mich **eurer**.* ˜ I take pity on you(rs).

***meiner**unbedeutenden Meinung nach.* ˜ in my humble opinion (IMHO)

86.2.3 Dative case personal pronouns

The personal pronouns in the **dative** case are used as indirect objects of verbs and after the prepositions *aus, außer, bei, mit, nach, seit, von, zu*.

	Singular		Plural	
1st person	**mir**	me	**uns**	us
2nd person	**dir** (**Ihnen***)	you	**euch** (**Ihnen***)	you
3rd person	**ihm, ihr, ihm**	him, her,	**ihnen**	them
		it		

***Polite** form. ----

86.2.4 Accusative case personal pronouns

The personal pronouns in the **accusative** case are used as direct objects of transitve verbs and after the prepositions *durch, für, gegen, ohne, um.*

	Singular		Plural	
1st person	**mich**	me	**uns**	us

2nd person	**dich (Sie*)**	you	**euch (Sie*)**	you
3rd person	**ihn, sie, es**	him, her, it	**sie**	them

***Polite** form.

87 A.04 - Grammar Reference Table II

87.1 Conjugating 'to be'

```
Ich bin groß.          I am tall.
Du bist sehr groß.     You are very tall.
Sie ist klein.         She is short.
Sie sind groß.         They are tall.
```

In these cases, we use the correct form of *sein* for each situation. Please notice the final two sentences both use 'Sie', and we must look at the verb to determine the difference between 'she' and 'they'.

In German, the English infinitive 'to be' is translated as *sein*.

This is the table of the forms of 'sein', with rough English translations. Note that in English, there are only three forms (am, is, are) while German has five (bin, bist, ist, sind, seid).

Also, the verb conjugation of the two you-formals are always the exact same.

German

sein

Person	Singular Pronoun	Verb Form	Plural Pronoun	Verb Form
1st	ich	bin	wir	sind
2nd	du	bist	ihr	seid
3rd	er / sie / es	ist	sie	sind
Fml.	Sie	sind	Sie	sind

English

to be

1st	I	am	we	are
2nd	you	are	y'all	are
3rd	he / she / it	is	they	are
Fml.	you (formal)	are	y'all (formal)	are

---

1   http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/German%2FLevel%20I
2   http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/German%2FLevel%20II
3   http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/German%2FLevel%20III

87.2 Conjugating Normal Verbs

```
Er spielt Volleyball.      He plays volleyball.
Ich mache Hausaufgaben.    I do my homework.
Wir kommen aus München.    We come from Munich.
Was machst du?             What are you doing?
```

In these sentences, different verbs and endings are used. Note that the verb is always in second position.

When conjugating normal verbs, use the endings shown below (a memory hook is the *"best ten"* endings). Note that in normal verbs, such as spielen and machen, ihr-form and er/sie/es-form are the same and the wir-form, sie (pl)-form and the formal are all the same as the infinitive.

-en

1st	ich	-e	wir	-en
2nd	du	-st	ihr	-t
3rd	er / sie / es	-t	sie	-en
Fml.	Sie	-en	Sie	-en

spielen - to play

1st	ich	spiele	wir	spielen
2nd	du	spielst	ihr	spielt
3rd	er / sie / es	spielt	sie	spielen
Fml.	Sie	spielen	Sie	spielen

machen - to make/do

1st	ich	mache	wir	machen
2nd	du	machst	ihr	macht
3rd	er / sie / es	macht	sie	machen
Fml.	Sie	machen	Sie	machen

87.3 Conjugating Irregular Verbs

```
Ich habe keine Zeit.       I have no time.
Gib mir das Buch!          Give me the book.
Sie wandert gern.          She likes to hike.
Er liest einen Roman.      He is reading a novel.
```

In each of these sentences, we use an irregular verb. Irregularity occurs in the ich-form or the du-form and er/sie/es-forms. There are three types of irregularity.

87.3.1 E in the first syllable

One form of irregularity occurs *sometimes* when the verb contains an 'e' in the first syllable. The change is simple: the du-form and er/sie/es forms both change the 'e' to an 'i.e.' or an 'i'. Two common examples are shown. Note that the er/sie/es-form and ihr-form are no longer the same.

sehen - to see

1st	ich	sehe	wir	sehen
2nd	du	*siehst*	ihr	seht
3rd	er / sie / es	*sieht*	sie	sehen
Fml.	Sie	sehen	Sie	sehen

geben - to give

1st	ich	gebe	wir	geben
2nd	du	*gibst*	ihr	gebt
3rd	er / sie / es	*gibt*	sie	geben
Fml.	Sie	geben	Sie	geben

87.3.2 Haben

A similar, yet different, change occurs in the verb "haben". As in the irregularity above, the du-form and er/sie/es-form change.

haben - to have

1st	ich	habe	wir	haben
2nd	du	*hast*	ihr	habt
3rd	er / sie / es	*hat*	sie	haben
Fml.	Sie	haben	Sie	haben

87.3.3 Verbs ending in Consonant-N

Some verbs change the ich-form for obvious reasons. "Wandern" and "basteln" are two examples. Both drop the first e in the ich-form.

wandern - to hike

1st	ich	*wandre*	wir	wandern
2nd	du	wanderst	ihr	wandert
3rd	er / sie / es	wandert	sie	wandern
Fml.	Sie	wanderen	Sie	wanderen

basteln - to build

1st	ich	*bastle*	wir	basteln

2nd	du	bastelst	ihr	bastelt
3rd	er / sie / es	bastelt	sie	basteln
Fml.	Sie	basteln	Sie	basteln

87.4 Conjugating Modals

```
Ich will ins Kino gehen.    I want to go to the movies.
Dürfen wir hier essen?      May we eat here?
Was kann ich für dich tun?  What can I do for you?
Er mag Romane lesen.        He likes to read books.
```

Modals are a new kind of verb. They are the equivalent to helping verbs in English. There are seven basic modals: können (can), mögen (like), dürfen (may), wollen (want), sollen (should), müssen (must), and möchten (would like). Möchten isn't technically a modal, but it acts like one in most aspects.

Modals are conjugated very differently. The ich-form and er/sie/es-form are always alike and singular has a different verb in the first syllable (except in sollen and möchten). Below are the conjugations of the six basic modals and möchten.

können - can

1st	ich	kann	wir	können
2nd	du	kannst	ihr	könnt
3rd	er / sie / es	kann	sie	können
Fml.	Sie	können	Sie	können

mögen - like

1st	ich	mag	wir	mögen
2nd	du	magst	ihr	mögt
3rd	er / sie / es	mag	sie	mögen
Fml.	Sie	mögen	Sie	mögen

dürfen - may

1st	ich	darf	wir	dürfen
2nd	du	darfst	ihr	dürft
3rd	er / sie / es	darf	sie	dürfen
Fml.	Sie	dürfen	Sie	dürfen

wollen - want

1st	ich	will	wir	wollen
2nd	du	willst	ihr	wollt
3rd	er / sie / es	will	sie	wollen
Fml.	Sie	wollen	Sie	wollen

sollen - should

1st	ich	soll	wir	sollen
2nd	du	sollst	ihr	sollt
3rd	er / sie / es	soll	sie	sollen
Fml.	Sie	sollen	Sie	sollen

müssen - must

1st	ich	muss	wir	müssen
2nd	du	musst	ihr	müsst
3rd	er / sie / es	muss	sie	müssen
Fml.	Sie	müssen	Sie	müssen

möchten - would like

1st	ich	möchte	wir	möchten
2nd	du	möchtest	ihr	möchtet
3rd	er / sie / es	möchte	sie	möchten
Fml.	Sie	möchten	Sie	möchten

87.5 Separable Verbs

```
Du siehst schön aus!      You look good!
Ich muss mein Zimmer aufräumen.
                          I have to clean my room.
Komm mit!                 Come with!
Probier diese Jeans an!   Try these jeans on.
```

Some verbs in German are separable: they have a prefix that can be separated from the base. When the verb is used with a modal, it regains the prefix at the end of the sentence. When it is the main verb of the sentence, the prefix is moved to the end of the sentence.

An "example" in English would be the word "intake". When it is used as a verb, it becomes "take ... in". When it is used as an adjective or a noun, it becomes "intake" again.

Two easy examples of separable verbs are *aussehen* and *mitkommen*. Note that aussehen is also irregular.

aussehen - to appear

1st	ich	sehe aus	wir	sehen aus
2nd	du	siehst aus	ihr	seht aus
3rd	er / sie / es	sieht aus	sie	sehen aus
Fml.	Sie	sehen aus	Sie	sehen aus

mitkommen - to come along/with

1st	ich	komme mit	wir	kommen mit
2nd	du	kommst mit	ihr	kommt mit
3rd	er / sie / es	kommt mit	sie	kommen mit
Fml.	Sie	kommen mit	Sie	kommen mit

88 A.05 - Webseiten and other resources

Appendix 3 ˜ Online Resources for German Language Students

88.1 Lists and directories to online resources

- bab.la[1] - Language Portal | Online Quizzes | Learn Languages
- German Flashcards[2] - Flashcards with audiofiles and dictionary
- www.deutschlern.net[3] - E-learning platform for beginning, intermediate and advanced students and teachers of German. Exercises based on authentic texts train reading comprehension, vocabulary, and grammar. Monitor function for teachers. Free of charge, requires free login.
- Learn German Online[4] - Free German lessons online.
- Learn German for free[5] - Free German language lessons.
- Deutsch als Fremdsprache[6] - Useful links for German language learners. Site in German.
- German Language and Culture Resources[7] - Materials and resources for learning the German language and about German-speaking culture.
- Free Online German Tutorial[8] - at ielanguages.com
- Free resources for language students[9] - Practice speaking German with audio forums.
- Learn-German[10] - Learn German quickly with our German tips, advice, and links.
- Mango[11] - Mango Languages has free German Lessons for English speakers.
- lernsoware.de[12] Wiki German lessons online

88.2 Über die deutsche Sprache - about German

- Ethnologue report for German[13]
- Verein Deutsche Sprache[14]

---

1   http://en.bab.la
2   http://www.german-flashcards.com/
3   http://www.deutschlern.net
4   http://learngerman.elanguageschool.net
5   http://www.populearn.com/german/
6   http://www.cornelia.siteware.ch/daf.html
7   http://www.vistawide.com/german
8   http://www.ielanguages.com/German.html
9   http://loquela-education.net
10   http://learn-german.bravehost.com
11   http://www.trymango.com
12   http://lernsoware.de
13   http://www.ethnologue.com/show_language.asp?code=GER
14   http://www.vds-ev.de

88.3 Online Wörterbücher - Dictionary

- Free Online Dictionary[15] - Languages of the world

88.3.1 Deutsch-Englisch (German-English)

- Wiktionary - English[16]
- Wiktionary - German[17]
- bab.la German-English[18] - Translations, synonyms, grammar, voice output, regional and colloquial expressions.
- dicologos[19] really this is a multilanguage dictionary with ofer 7.000.000 lemmas in several languages.
- Babylon[20] Babylon Online Dictionary
- LEO[21] - with audiofiles of most of the words and vocabulary trainer.
- Dict.cc[22]
- Pons[23] - Dictionary with vocabulary trainer.
- Ding[24] - Ding is a Dictionary lookup program for the X window system (Linux, Unix - not for Mac or MS Windows). It comes with a German-English Dictionary with approximately 180,000 entries.r.

88.3.2 Nur Deutsch - German only

- DWDS- Das digitale Wörterbuch der deutschen Sprache[25] - German only dictionary for advanced learners.
- Deutsche Wörterbücher von Wahrig[26] - Orthography and foreign words
- Redensartenindex[27] - German idioms and proverbs with explanations

88.3.3 Slideshows with pictures and pronuciations

Language courses German[28] at the time of insertion there is only one file about fruit - I will try to add new ones every week-end.

---

15   http://www.free-dictionary-translation.com
16   http://en.wiktionary.org
17   http://de.wiktionary.org
18   http://en.bab.la/dictionary/german-english
19   http://www.dicologos.org
20   http://online.babylon.com/combo/index.html
21   http://dict.leo.org/
22   http://dict.cc/
23   http://www.pons.de/
24   http://www-user.tu-chemnitz.de/~fri/ding/
25   http://www.dwds.de/cgi-bin/dwds/test/query.cgi?wdg=1
26   http://www20.wissen.de/xt/default.do?MENUNAME=PS_W_S_Deutsche_Woerterbuecher
27   http://www.redensarten-index.de/suche.php
28   http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/Category:Language_courses-German

88.4 Deutsche Grammatik und Rechtschreibung- German Grammar and Spelling

- Canoo[29] - extensive database about inflection and word formation
- German Grammar Resource[30] - Free German grammar lessons
- Free online German course[31] - new orthography, grammar, exercises, tests, example sentences, jokes, learning tips

88.5 Aussprache - Pronunciation

- A Guide to German Pronunciation[32] - Pronunciation course for beginners.

88.6 Blogs

- Deutschlernblog[33] Tips for learning German. Site entirely in German.
- DaF-Blog[34] On German language and how to learn it. Parts of the Site are in English, but most of it in German.
- Deutsch-Happen[35] small, bite-sized snaps of German language for the advancing learner

88.7 Podcasts

88.7.1 from learners

- Speaken Sie Deutsch?[36]: Podcast from Canadian Hugh Gordon (Rss-Feed[37]).

88.7.2 for learners

- Guter Umgang[38]: German language learning blog about colloquial German (RSS-Feed[39]).
- Let's speak German[40]: Jokes, poems, tonguetwisters and more in German (RSS-Feed[41]).

---

29 http://www.canoo.net
30 http://www.ielanguages.com/German.html
31 http://www.deutsch-lernen.com
32 http://userweb.port.ac.uk/~joyce1/abinitio/pronounce/
33 http://www.deutschlern.net/blog/
34 http://www.cornelia.siteware.ch/blog/wordpress/
35 http://deutschhappen.blogspot.com/
36 http://speakensiedeutsch.blogspot.com/
37 http://feeds.feedburner.com/SpeakenSieDeutsch
38 http://www.deutschlern.net/
39 http://www.deutschlern.net/podcast-deutsch-lernen-mit-umgangssprache
40 http://learninggerman.mschubertberlin.de/podblog/index.php
41 http://learninggerman.mschubertberlin.de/podblog/rss.php

- Podcasts of Deutsche Welle[42]: Nachrichten, Top-Thema, Stichwort, Sprachbar and All-tagsdeutsch are specifically made for language learners. Most of the texts can be found on the pages Deutsch im Fokus[43] (Sprachbar, Stichwort and Alltagsdeutsch) and Didaktuelles[44] (Nachrichten and Top-Thema).
  - DW: Slowly spoken news[45] - suitable for B2, C1
- Slow German[46]: Podcast in slowly spoken German across a variety of topics, ranging from absolute beginner to intermediate.

88.8 Tandem

Tandem by E-Mail[47]

The Mixxer[48] Tandem via Skype[49]

---

42   http://www.dw-world.de/dw/0,2142,9540,00.html
43   http://www.dw-world.de/dw/0,2142,9213,00.html
44   http://www.dw-world.de/dw/0,2142,2146,00.html
45   http://www.dw.de/deutsch-lernen/nachrichten/s-8030
46   http://www.slowgerman.com/
47   http://www.slf.ruhr-uni-bochum.de/
48   http://www.language-exchanges.org
49   http://www.skype.com

89 A.07 - Namen

89.1 Names

This is a list of common, modern German names. Please add to it.

89.1.1 First Names

German names have undergone a drastic change in the last 60 years. Older, "typical" German names like **Hans**, **Fritz**, **Heinrich**, **Karl** or **Wilhelm** are now uncommon in contemporary Germany. Today many parents give their children names like (ten most popular names 2005):

Boys
1. Alexander
2. Maximilian
3. Leon
4. Lukas/Lucas
5. Luca
6. Paul
7. Jonas
8. Felix
9. Tim
10. David

Girls
1. Marie
2. Sophie/Sofie
3. Maria
4. Anna, Anne
5. Leonie
6. Lena
7. Emily
8. Lea/Leah
9. Julia
10. Laura

(Source: Gesellschaft für deutsche Sprache[1])

Boys' Names

89.2 Typical for young people

Boy's names	pet names
Alexander	Alex
André, Andreas	Andi
Axel	-

---

1   http://gfds.de/index.php?id=63

Christian, Christoph	Chris
David	
Dennis, Denis	
Edvin	Eddy
Fabian	Fabi
Felix	
Finn, Fynn	
Florian	Flo, Flori
Jan	
Jonas	
Julian, Julius	Juli, Jule
Kevin	
Lars	
Leo, Leon	
Luka, Luca, Lucas, Lukas	Luki
Manuel	Manu, Mani
Matthias	Matt, Matti, Mats
Max, Maximilian	Max, Maxi
Michael	Micha, Michi
Moritz	Mo
Niko, Nick, Nikolas, Niklas, Nicolas	Nik, Niko
Noah	
Patrick	Pat
Paul	
Philipp	Phil
Robin	
Sebastian	Sebi, Seb, Sebbe, Basti
Simon	Simi
Stefan, Stephan, Steffen	Steff
Sven	Svenni
Tim	Timmi
Tobias	Tobi
Tom	Tommi
Yannick, Yannik	

older names:

- Alfi, Alfred
- Adolf
- Albert, Bert, Kunibert
- Anton
- Achim, Joachim
- Adam
- Aaron
- Armin
- Björn

- Bernard
- Bennedikt
- Bruno
- Bodo
- Boris
- Berthold
- Benjamin
- Clemens
- Carlo, Karlo, Karl
- Carsten
- Dieter, Dietrich
- Daniel
- Domian, Damian
- Detlev
- Dirk
- Erik
- Erwin
- Emil
- Eberhard
- Eckart
- Edmund
- Ernst
- Ewald
- Franz, Frank
- Fritz
- Fridolin
- Fred, Frederik
- Friedrich, Friedhelm
- Falko
- Gustav
- Gerhardt
- Gert
- Günther
- Gregor
- Gunnar
- Hans, Hans-Jürgen, Hannes
- Harald
- Heinz
- Heinrich, Heiner
- Hugo
- Hektor
- Helge
- Heiko
- Hartmut
- Herbert
- Holger
- Ingo, Ingolf
- Jürgen, Jörg

- Jens
- Janosch
- Jakob
- Johann
- Karl
- Klaus
- Knut
- Kurt
- Konrad
- Kaspar
- Ludwig
- Leif
- Manfred
- Malte
- Norbert
- Nils
- Olaf
- Oliver
- Otto, Ottfried
- Paul
- Peter
- Rudi, Rüdiger, Rudolph
- Roman
- Robert
- Rex
- Reinhard, Rainer, Reiner
- Sören
- Siegfried
- Sönke
- Thomas
- Till
- Torsten
- Ulf
- Ulli
- Uwe
- Udo
- Viktor
- Werner
- Wolfgang, Wolf, Welf
- Wilhelm, Willi

Girls' Names

young ones:

- Anna, Anne, Annika
- Amelie

- Angelina
- Bianca
- Christina, Christine
- Daniela
- Elea
- Eva
- Elisa
- Emma
- Emely, Emily
- Franziska
- Finja
- Hannah, Hanna
- Isabell, Isabelle
- Julia, Jule, Juliane
- Jana
- Janine, Janina
- Johanna
- Jasmin
- Klara
- Katharina
- Kim
- Kira
- Lena
- Lara
- Luise, Luisa
- Lea
- Lina
- Larissa
- Lisa
- Lina
- Leonie
- Liv
- Maike, Meike, Mareike
- Melissa
- Merle
- Mercedes
- Marie
- Maja
- Marlene, Marleen
- Martina
- Nina
- Nicole
- Nora
- Petra
- Paula
- Pia
- Ronja
- Svenja

- Sarah
- Sofie, Sophie, Sophia
- Samantha
- Stella
- Susie
- Tabea
- Tamara
- Vivien
- Vanessa

older ones:

- Angela
- Anita
- Andschana
- Antonia
- Birgit
- Brigitte
- Berta
- Christa, Christel
- Doris
- Diana
- Fanny
- Frieda
- Gerta
- Gisela
- Gutrun
- Hannelore
- Helga
- Heidi, Heide
- Inga, Inge
- Iris
- Ilse
- Ingrid
- Josephine
- Karin, Karen
- Linda
- Lydia
- Marta
- Monika
- Nadja
- Olivia
- Roswitha
- Renate
- Susanne
- Sabine
- Sissi
- Simone
- Silke

- Tina, Tine
- Ursula
- Ulla
- Vera
- Veronika
- Winnifried
- Wanda
- Wilhelma

89.2.1 Last Names

The 51. most popular last names in Germany:

1. Müller
2. Schmidt
3. Schneider
4. Fischer
5. Meyer
6. Weber
7. Wagner
8. Becker
9. Schulz
10. Hoffmann
11. Schäfer
12. Koch
13. Bauer
14. Richter
15. Klein
16. Wolf
17. Schröder
18. Neumann
19. Schwarz
20. Zimmermann
21. Braun
22. Krüger
23. Hofmann
24. Hartmann
25. Lange
26. Schmitt
27. Werner
28. Schmitz
29. Krause
30. Meier
31. Lehmann
32. Schmid
33. Schulze
34. Maier

35. Köhler
36. Herrmann
37. König
38. Walter
39. Mayer
40. Huber
41. Kaiser
42. Fuchs
43. Peters
44. Lang
45. Scholz
46. Möller
47. Weiß
48. Jung
49. Hahn
50. Schubert
51. Zächer

90 A.08 - False Friends

There are some words which are spelled the same in English and in German, but have completely different meanings. Even though the words are spelled the same, they are usually pronounced completely differently. It can sometimes be dangerous to use these words (for both native English speakers and native German speakers.) Think of that, next time someone wants to give you a " Gift[1]" or opens a door and says " After[2] you!"

Note: This list contains some items of etymological[3] interest. For example, the transformation of the consonant 't' in German to 'd' in English in word pairs like Bart->Beard, Bett->Bed, Gut->Good, Hart->Hard, Rot->Red, and Not->Need.

---

1   Chapter 91 on page 363
2   Chapter 91 on page 363
3   http://en.wiktionary.org/wiki/etymology

Word	German meaning (in English) / Englische Bedeutung (auf Deutsch)
After	Anus
also	Später, Nachher
	thus
	auch
Angel	Fishing Rod
	Engel
	Striking
Apart	Abgesondert, Abseits
	Poor
Arm	Arm
Art	Kind, sort, species
	Kunst, Künstlichkeit
	Ace
Ass	Esel, Dumpfbacke, Knallkopf, Arsch (vulg.)
	Bath
Bad	Schlecht, Schlimm
	Excavator
Bagger	Angesteller im Supermarkt der die Einkäufe in Tüten packt
	Soon
bald	Unbehaart, Kahlköpfig
	Afraid
bang	Knall, Krach, Schall
	in Cash, Pure
bar	Stab (see also: 410 Stab), Kneipe
	Beard
Bart	Name eines Mannes
	asked politely, requested (past tense)
bat	Fledermaus
	Flower bed
Beet	Zuckerrübe, rote Rübe
	to ask politely, request
bitten	gebissen
	Shiny, Shining
blank	Unbeschriftet, Unausgefüllt

Word	German meaning (in English) Englische Bedeutung (auf Deutsch)
Blech	Sheet metal
bog	Ausdruck des Ekels
Brand	to Twist, Form, Bend (past tense) Sumpf, Torfmoor Fire
Brilliant, brillant	Markenprodukt Diamond, prächtig, herrlich Blendend, Geistvoll
Bug	Front of a boat or plane Laus, Insekt, Störung
Danke	Thanks
dick	Feucht Thick
Elf	Schnüffler, Schwanz, der steife Penis Eleven, (coll. soccer team) Elfe, Kobold
falls	If, in case Wasserfälle
Fang, fang	Catch, to catch, to capture (imperative) Reißzahn
fatal	Unfortunate Verhängnisvoll, Unheilvoll, Tödlich
fast	Almost, Nearly Schnell Fast
fasten	Befestigen
Fee	Fairy Preise, Gebühr
Fell	Coat (animal) fällen
fern	Far away, Distant Farnkraut
First	Ridge Zuerst

355

Word	German meaning (in English) / Englische Bedeutung (auf Deutsch)
flog	Flew
	Peitschen, Auspeitschen
fort	Away, Off, Gone
	Festung, Kastell
Funk	Radio
	Drückeberger, Musik von 1970's
Gang	Walk, Gait, Way
	Gruppe, Bande, Trupp
Gift	Poison
	Gabe, Geschenk
Grab	Grave
	Aufgreifen, Ergreifen
Grad	Degree (temperature)
	einen akademischen Grad erlangen
grub	dug (past tense)
	Futter
gut	Good
	Darm (Schnecke und Kette)
Hack	ground meal, hash
	Heib, Kerbe, Zerhacken
half	Helped (past tense)
	Halb
Handy	Cell Phone
	Praktisch, Passend, Handlich
Hang	Slope, Inclination
	Hängen, Henken
Happen	Bit, Morsel
	Zufällig Geschehen, Vorkommen, Passieren
hart	Hard
	Hirsch
Heck	Back of a car, boat or plane
	Was zum Teufel? (What the Heck?)
Held	Hero
	Gehalten

Word	German meaning (in English) / Englische Bedeutung (auf Deutsch)
hell	Bright / Hölle
Herd	Cooker, Oven, Range / Herde
Hose	Pants / Schlauch
Hub, hub	Throw, Lob, Swing (see also: 410 Lob), (past tense of) to lift / Wickelkern, Nabe
Hummer	Lobster / Jemand der summt
Hut	Hat / Hütte
Kind	child / Art, Sorte
Labor	Laboratory / Arbeit
Lack	Varnish / Knappheit, Mangel
lag	Lay / zurueckbleiben, zoegern
Last	Load, Burden, Weight / Zuletzt
Lied	Song / Gelogen
links	Left / Verknüpfung, Verbindungen
List	Cunning / Schlagseite
Lob	Praise / Werf, Hub (see also: 410 Hub)
log	Lied / Block, Klotz
Lot	Plumb (line) / Pazille, die Menge, die Masse

Word	German meaning (in English) / Englische Bedeutung (auf Deutsch)
Lust	To feel like doing something, desire (this can has the English meaning, depending on the situation) / Sinnliche Begierde
Made	Maggot / Hergestellt, Gemacht
Maul	Mouth (animal) / der Schlegel, Beschädigen, Durchprügeln
Mist	Manure, Trash / leichter Nebel
Not	distress, need / Nicht
Note	Grade (in school), musical note / bemerken, aufschreiben, kleiner Brief
nun	Now / die Schwester (im Kloster), Nonne
Pest	Plague / Nervensäge
Rang	Rank / Geklingelt, Geklungen
Rad	Wheel / Ausdruck der Bewunderung (wie Geil)
Rat	Advice / die Ratte
Regal	Shelves / Majestätisch, Königlich, Hoheitsvoll
Rind	Beef, Cattle / Schwarte, Schale
Rock	Skirt / Stein, Fels
Roman	Novel / der Römer
Rot	Red / Verrotten, Verwesung
Sage	History, Myth / Weise, Klug, Gescheit

Word	German meaning (in English) / Englische Bedeutung (auf Deutsch)
See	Lake
	Siehe
Sense	Scythe
	Wahrnehmung, Bedeutung, Verstand, Sinn
Silvester	New Year's Eve
	Name eines Mannes
Speck	Bacon
	Fleck
Spur	Trace, Tracks, Lane
	Schiffsschnabel, Sporn, Ansporn (see also: 410 Spore)
Stab	Rod, Pole, Baton, Bar (see also: 410 Bar)
	Erstechen
Stare	Starlings
	anstarren
stark	Strong
	Völlig, Gänzlich
Stern	Star
	Ernst, das Heck
Tag	Day
	Markierstelle, Kennzeichnung
Tang	Seaweed
	Amerikanisches Orangengetränk
Taste	Key (as in keyboard)
	Kostprobe, Geschmackssinn
toll	Great! Super!
	Zollabgabe, Straßenbenutzungsgebühr
Tod	Death, Dead
	Name eines Mannes
Ton	Clay, a Sound
	die Tonne
Tot	Dead
	kleines Kind, kleiner Knirps
Wade	calf (of the leg)
	waten

Word	German meaning (in English) / Englische Bedeutung (auf Deutsch)
Wand	Wall
	der Zauberstab
war	Was (see also: 410 Was)
	Krieg
was	What?
	wurde/war (see also: 410 War)
Welt	World
	Quaddel, Beule
Wetter	Weather
	Nasser
wider	Against, Contrary to
	Weiter, Breiter
will	Wants
	Wille

Although not spelled identically in both languages, beginners are often confused by the similarity of the German "bekommen" and English "to become".

bekommen => to receive, to get

werden => to become

91 A.09 - Level I Vocabulary

<< Beginning German[1] | Basic German[2] | Intermediate German[3] ---- Appendix 9 ˜ Vocabulary for Level One

91.1 Wie heißt du?

91.1.1 Subject Pronouns in Nominative Case

```
I          Ich
We         Wir
You        Du
           Sie (formal)
You All    Ihr
           Sie (formal)
He         Er
She        Sie
It         Es
They       Sie
```

91.1.2 Verbs

To Have

```
Have       Habe (1st Person, Singular)
           Hast (2nd Person, Singular)
           Haben (1st & 3rd Person, Plural)
           Habt (2nd Person, Plural)
Has        Hat
```

---

1   http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/German%2FLevel%20I
2   http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/German%2FLevel%20II
3   http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/German%2FLevel%20III

To Be

```
Am          Bin
Are         Bist (1st Person, Singular)
            Sind (1st & 3rd Person, Plural)
            Seid (2nd Person, Plural)
Is          Ist
```

91.1.3 Greeting & Goodbyes

```
Hello!      Hallo!
            Servus! (used in Bavaria and Austria)
            Moin! or Moin Moin! (used in northern Germany)
            Grüezi! (used in Switzerland)
Good morning! Guten Morgen! or Morgen!
Good day!   Guten Tag! or Tag!
Good evening! Guten Abend! or N'Abend!
            Grüß Gott! (used in southern Germany, Austria and South Tyrol)
Goodbye!    Auf Wiedersehen! or Wiedersehen
Bye!        Tschüss! or Tschau!
            Servus! (used in Bavaria, Austria)
Later!      Bis später! or Bis dann!
Good night! Gute Nacht!
```

91.1.4 How You Are

```
Good        Gut
Super!      Spitze!
Great!      Prima!
Very good!  Sehr gut!
Bad         Schlecht
Miserable   Miserabel
```

91.1.5 Interrogative Adverbs

```
Who         Wer
What        Was
Where       Wo
When        Wann
Why         Warum
How         Wie
```

91.1.6 Genders

```
Boy         Der Junge
Girl        Das Mädchen
Man         Der Herr
Woman       Die Frau
Boys        Die Jungen
Girls       Die Mädchen
Men         Die Männer
Women       Die Frauen
```

91.2 Freizeit

91.2.1 Sports & Activities

```
Sport(s)       Sport
Interests      Hobbys/Interessant
Soccer         Fußball
USA Football   Amerikan Football
Volleyball     Volleyball
Basketball     Basketball
Tennis         Tennis
Baseball       Baseball
9-pin Bowling  Kegeln
Chess          Schach
Board Game     Das Brettspiel
Game           Das Spiel
Homework       Hausaufgaben
Television     Fernsehen
Movie          Der Film, Filme
```

91.2.2 Conjunctions

```
And         Und
But         Aber
Or          Oder
```

91.2.3 Verbs

```
To Have       haben
To Be         sein
To Be Called  heißen
To Play       spielen
To Do/Make    machen
To Read       lesen
To Watch      schauen
To See        sehen
To Work       arbeiten
To Write      schreiben
To Swim       schwimmen
```

91.2.4 Numbers

```
One         Eins
Two         Zwei
Three       Drei
Four        Vier
Five        Fünf
Six         Sechs
Seven       Sieben
Eight       Acht
Nine        Neun
Ten         Zehn
Eleven      Elf
Twelve      Zwölf
Thirteen    Dreizehn
Fourteen    Vierzehn
Fifteen     Fünfzehn
Sixteen     Sechzehn
Seventeen   Siebzehn
Eighteen    Achtzehn
Nineteen    Neunzehn
Twenty      Zwanzig
Thirty      Dreißig
Forty       Vierzig
Fifty       Fünfzig
Sixty       Sechzig
Seventy     Siebzig
Eighty      Achtzig
Ninety      Neunzig
Hundred     Hundert
Thousand    Tausend
```

91.2.5 How to Read Time

```
After        Nach
Till         Vor
Quarter      Viertel
Half Before  Halb
```

91.2.6 Times in the Day

```
Day           Tag
Today         Heute
Tomorrow      Morgen
Yesterday     Gestern
Early Morning Morgen (use morgen früh for tomorrow morning)
Morning       Vormittag
Afternoon     Nachmittag
Evening       Abend
Night         Nacht
Noon          Mittag
Midnight      Mitternacht
```

91.2.7 Days

```
Monday        Montag
Tuesday       Dienstag
Wednesday     Mittwoch
Thursday      Donnerstag
Friday        Freitag
Saturday      Samstag or Sonnabend
Sunday        Sonntag
```

91.2.8 Months

```
January       Januar
              Jänner (used in Austria)
February      Februar
March         März
April         April
May           Mai
June          Juni
              Juno (in spoken word only)
July          Juli
              Julei (in spoken word only)
August        August
September     September
October       Oktober
November      November
December      Dezember
```

91.2.9 Seasons

```
Spring      Frühling
Summer      Sommer
Autumn      Herbst
Winter      Winter
```

91.2.10 Time

```
Time        Die Zeit
Free Time   Die Freizeit
Always      Immer
Often       Oft
Sometimes   Manchmal
Seldom      Selten
Never       Nie
Only        Nur
```

91.3 Essen

91.3.1 Subject Pronouns in the Accusative Case

```
Me          Mich
Us          Uns
You         Dich
You All     Euch
Him         Ihn
Her         Sie
It          Es
Them        Sie
```

91.3.2 Food

```
Appetizers   Vorspeisen
Salad        Der Salat
Bread        Das Brot
Breadstick   Die Scheibe Brot
Main Dishes  Hauptgerichte
Sausage      Die Wurst
```

```
Sausages       Die Würste
Bratwurst      Die Bratwurst
Hot Dog        Das Hot Dog
Pizza          Die Pizza
Pizzas         Die Pizzen
Hamburger      Der Hamburger
Hamburgers     Die Hamburger
With           Mit (ignore article)
Without        Ohne (ignore article)
Tomatoes       Tomaten
Lettuce        Der Salat
Cheese         Der Käse
Pickles        Die Gewürzgurken
Onions         Die Zwiebeln
Ketchup        Der Ketchup
Mustard        Der Senf
Chicken        Das Hähnchen
Chickens       Die Hähnchen
Seafood        Die Meeresfrüchte (plural)
Fish           Der Fisch
Sides          Die Beilage (singular), die Beilagen (plural)
Soup           Die Suppe
Soups          Die Suppen
Noodle Soup    Die Nudelsuppe
French Fries   Die Pommes frites (plural)
Fries          Die Fritten (Informal and plural)
Pasta          Die Pasta or Die Nudeln
Potato         Die Kartoffel
Potatoes       Die Kartoffeln
Corn           Mais
Bean           Die Bohne
Beans          Die Bohnen
Desserts       Nachspeisen
Gâteau         Die (Sahne-)Torte
Strudel        Der Strudel
Apple strudel  Apfelstrudel
Cake           Der Kuchen
Piece of Cake  Das Stück Kuchen
Pie            Die Pastete
Piece of Pie   Das Stück Pastete
Apple Pie      Die Apfelpastete
Ice Cream      Das Eis
Pudding        Der Pudding
Cookie         Der Keks
Cookies        Die Kekse
Fruit          Das Obst
The Meal       Das Essen
Lunch          Mittagessen
Dinner         Abendessen
Hunger         Der Hunger
Thirst         Der Durst
```

91.3.3 Verbs

```
To Eat         Essen
To Drink       Trinken
To Receive     Bekommen
To Want        Wollen
Would Like     Möchten
```

91.3.4 Polite Conversation

```
Danke        Thank you
Bitte        Please & You're Welcome
Dankeschön   Thank you very much
Danke sehr   Thanks a lot
Kein Problem! No problem
```

91.3.5 Regional Foods

```
Chinese Food  Chinesisch Essen
Japanese Food Japanisch Essen
American Food Amerikanisch Essen
Mexican Food  Mexikanisch Essen
Arabic Food   Arabisch Essen
Italian Food  Italienisch Essen
Indian Food   Indisch Essen
French Food   Französich Essen
Greek Food    Griechisch Essen
```

91.3.6 Prepositions in the Accusative Case

```
Durch        Through
Für          For
Gegen        Against
Ohne         Without
Um           At, Around
```

91.3.7 Tastes

```
Delicious    Lecker
Tasty        Schmackhaft
Juicy        Saftig
Crunchy      Knackig
Crispy       Knusprig
Spicy        Würzig
Stale        Fade
             Fad (used in Austria)
Salty        Salzig
Sweet        Süß
```

```
Bitter       Bitter
Sour         Sauer
Creamy       Cremig
Hot          Heiß
Burnt        Angebrannt
Cold         Kalt
Disgusting   Schrecklich
```

91.3.8 Paying at a Restaurant

```
To Pay       Zahlen
The Bill     Die Rechnung
Waiter       Der Ober
```

91.4 Kleidung

91.4.1 Shopping

```
Babywear                    Die Babyartikel (plural)
Children's Wear       Die Kinderbekleidung
Clearance Sale              Der Räumungsverkauf
Closed                      Geschlossen
Clothing              Die Kleidung
Computer Section      Der Computershop
Cosmetics             Die Kosmetik
Customer              Der Kunde
Customer Service      Der Kundendienst
Electrical Appliance        Das Elektrogerät
Escalator             Die Rolltreppe
Fashion              Die Mode
Furniture             Das Möbel (no plural)
Gift                      Der Geschenkartikel
Good Value (Adj.)       Preiswert
Groceries             Die Lebensmittel (plural)
Jewellery             Damenschuhe (plural)
Leather Goods             Die Lederwaren (plural)
Open                      Geöffnet
Opening Hours             Die Öffnungszeiten (plural)
Present              Das Geschenk
Reduced              Reduziert
Sales Receipt             Der Kassenbon
Souvenir             Das Andenken
Special Offer             Das Sonderangebot
Sports Goods              Sportartikel (plural)
Stationery               Schreibwaren (plural)
Summer Sale              Der Sommerschlussverkauf (abbr. SSV)
Video Store              Die Videothek
Winter Sale              Der Winterschlussverkauf (abbr. WSV)
```

91.4.2 Shopping 2

```
Department Store        Warenhaus
Retail Store            Einzelhandelsgeschäft
The Mall                Einkaufszentrum
Boutique                Boutique
Store                   Geschäft
Manager                 Manager
Employee                Angestellter
Sales Clerk             Verkäufer
Cashier                 Kassierer
Dressing Room           Umkleidekabine
Men's Section           Männerabteilung
Women's Section         Frauenabteilung
First Floor             Erstes Stockwerk
Menswear                Männerkleidung
Second Floor            Zweiter Stock
Womenswear              Frauenkleidung
Third Floor             Dritte Stock
Kids Section            Kinderabteilung
Fourth Floor            Vierter Stock
Electronics             Elektronik
Kitchenware             Küchenbedarf
Fifth Floor             Fünfter Stock
Lighting                Beleuchtung
Bedding                 Bettwäsche
Toys                    Spielwaren
Six Floor               Sechster Stock
Food                    Lebensmittel
```

91.4.3 Items to Buy

```
Electronics             Elektronik
Television              Fernsehen
Digital Camera          Digitalkamera
Telephone               Telefon
Cell phone              Mobiltelefon, Handy
Computer                Computer, Rechner
Speakers                Lautsprecher
DVDs                    DVD
CDs                     CD
DVD Player              DVD-Player
CD Player               CD-Player
Bedding                 Bettwäsche
Blankets                Decken
Pillow                  Kopfkissen
Pillow Case             Kopfkissenbezug
Sheets                  Blätter
Bed Skirt               Bett-Rock
```

91.4.4 Money

Price	Preis
Note	Der Schein
Coin	Die Münze
1 Euro Coin	Das Eurostück
2 Euro Coin	Das Zweieurostück
5 Euro Note	Der Fünfeuroschein
10 Euro Note	Der Zehneuroschein
100 Euro Note	Der Hunderteuroschein
1 Cent Coin	Das Centstück
2 Cent Coin	Das Zweicentstück
5 Cent Coin	Das Fünfcentstück
10 Cent Coin	Das Zehncentstück
20 Cent Coin	Das Zwanzigcentstück
50 Cent Coin	Das Fünfcentstück

91.4.5 Clothes

Skirt	Der Rock
Pullover	Der Pullover
Scarf	Das Tuch
Coat	Der Mantel
Shirt	Das Hemd
Sweater	Der Pullover
Necktie	Der Schlips
Jacket	Die Jacke
Pants	Die Hose
Hat	Der Hut
Shoe	Der Schuh
Sock	Die Socke
Glove	Der Handschuh
Blouse	Die Bluse

91.4.6 Sizes

Size	Die Größe
Color	Die Farbe
Cotton	Die Baumwolle
Leather	Das Leder
Rayon	Die Kuntseide
Small	Klein
Medium	Mittel
Large	Groß
Extra-Large	Extragroß

91.4.7 Words That Describe

Cheap	Billig
Expensive	Teuer
Pretty	Schön
Ugly	Hässlich
Soft	Weich
New	Neu
Broad	Breit
Wide	Weit
Tight	Eng
Comfortable	Bequem

91.4.8 Colors

Red	Rot
Blue	Blau
Green	Grün
Orange	Orange
Violet	Veilchen
Yellow	Gelb
Brown	Braun
Indigo	Indigo
Gray	Grau
Black	Schwarz
White	Weiß

91.4.9 Verbs

To Look	Aussehen
To Try On	Anprobieren
To Put On	Anziehen
To Take	Nehmen
To Buy	Kaufen
To Have On/Wear	Anhaben or Tragen

91.5 Volk und Familie

91.5.1 Family

```
Sohn                    Son
Tochter                 Daughter
Vater                   Father
Mutter                  Mother
Großvater               Grandfather
Großmutter              Grandmother
Opa                     Grandpa
Oma                     Grandma
Schwester               Sister
Bruder                  Brother
Geschwister             Brothers & Sisters
Enkel                   Grandson
Enkelin                 Granddaughter
Frau                    Wife
Mann                    Husband
Schwiegervater          Father-in-Law
Schwiegertochter        Daughter-in-Law
Schwager                Brother-in-Law
Schwägerin              Sister-in-Law
Schwiegermutter         Mother-in-Law
Schwiegersohn           Son-in-Law
Onkel                   Uncle
Tante                   Aunt
Geschenk                Present
```

91.6 Schule

91.6.1 Verbs

```
Nimmt                   To Take Away
Lesen                   To Read
Schreiben               To Write
Studieren               To Study
Lernen                  To Learn
Zeichnen                To Paint
```

91.6.2 Classes

```
Deutsch                 German
Englisch                English
Russisch                Russian
Französisch             French
Latein                  Latin
Mathematik              Mathematics
Sport                   PE or Gym
Kunst or Zeichnen       Arts
Musik                   Music
Geschichte              History
Biologie                Biology
Geografie               Geography
```

```
Religion                  RE or Religion
Chemie                    Chemistry
Physik                    Physics
Informatik                Computer Science
```

91.6.3 School Supplies and Ect.

```
der Radiergummi           Eraser/Rubber
der Bleistift             Pencil
der Kuli/Kugelschreiber   Pen
das Fach                  Subject
die Klasse                Class
der Lehrer                Teacher (male)
die Lehrerin              Teacher (female)
die Schule                School
der Schüler               Student (High/Secondary School and Lower)
der Student               Student (College/University)
die Stunde/Schulstunde    Lesson
die Pause                 Break
die Schultasche           Backpack
```

91.7 Die Fete

91.7.1 Gifts

```
das Spiel                 Game
das Videospiel            Video Game
```

91.7.2 Parties

```
der Spaß                  Fun
die Feier                 PartyFormal
die Party                 Party
die Musik                 Music
die Torte                 Cake
das Fass                  Keg
das Bier                  Beer
der Schnaps               Hard Liquor
der Wein                  Wine
der Weißwein              White Wine
der Rotwein               Red Wine
Feiern                    To Party
```

```
Trinken                 Drinking
Saufen                  To Get Drunk
sich Erbrechen          To Throw Up
Kotzen                  To Puke (slang)
Tanzen          To Dance
der Geburtstag      Birthday
Weihnachten         Christmas
Ostern          Easter
das Jubiläum        Anniversary
```

91.8 Privileg und Verantwortung

91.8.1 Careers

```
Work                Arbeit
Doctor              Arzt
Buniness Man        Geschäftsmann
Buniness Woman      Geschäftsfrau
Teacher             Lehrer
Police Officer      Polizeibeamte
Fireman             Feuerwehrmann
Actor                   Schauspieler
Artist          Künstler
Author          Schriftsteller
Bank Clerk          Bankangestellter
Car Mechanic            Automechaniker
Chemist         Chemiker
Civil Servant       Beamter
Engineer         Ingenieur
Farmer          Landwirt
Hairdresser         Friseur
Journalist          Journalist
Lawyer          Rechtsanwalt
Lecturer         Dozent
Nurse               Krankenpfleger
Pensioner         Rentner
Photographer         Fotograf
Politician          Politiker
Postman         Briefträger
Professor           Professor
Salesperson          Verkäufer
Secretary         Sekretär
Student         Student
Taxi Driver          Taxifahrer
Waiter          Kellner
```

91.8.2 Tasks

```
Cleaning            Reinigung
Cooking             Kochen
```

Homework	Hausaufgaben
Tasks	Aufgaben

91.8.3 Locations

Germany Deutschland	
Hamburg	Hamburg
Berlin	Berlin
Frankfurt	Frankfurt
Colonge	Köln
Munich	München

91.9 Wetter

91.9.1 Weather

Weather	Wetter
Rain	Regen
Snow	Schnee
Snow Showers	Schneesch
Showers	Schauer
Thunder	Donner
Storm	Sturm
Thunderstorm	Gewitter
Cloudy	Bewölkt
Overcast	Bedeckt
Hail	Hagel
Drizzle	Nieseln
Thaw	Tauen
Frost	Frost

91.9.2 Transportion

Car	Auto
Train	Zug
Trainstation	Bahnhof
Airplane	Flugzeug
Boat	Boot
Highway	Landstraße
Road	Straße

----

92 CONTRIBUTORS

93 Contributors

Edits	User
1	879(CoDe)[1]
1	Addihockey10[2]
1	Addihockey10 (automated)[3]
53	Adrignola[4]
1	Alsocal[5]
2	Alton[6]
2	Andrewcool[7]
2	Arsenalfan[8]
16	Avicennasis[9]
4	Az1568[10]
2	Bepp[11]
2	Berni[12]
2	BiT[13]
1	Bielenberg[14]
3	BimBot[15]
4	Boit[16]
1	Buncic[17]
1	CQuinton[18]
2	CarsracBot[19]
1	Celestianpower[20]
4	Cheonhajangsa[21]

1   http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/User:879(CoDe)
2   http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/User:Addihockey10
3   http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/User:Addihockey10_(automated)
4   http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/User:Adrignola
5   http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/User:Alsocal
6   http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/User:Alton
7   http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/User:Andrewcool
8   http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/User:Arsenalfan
9   http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/User:Avicennasis
10 http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/User:Az1568
11 http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/User:Bepp
12 http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/User:Berni
13 http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/User:BiT
14 http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/User:Bielenberg
15 http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/User:BimBot
16 http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/User:Boit
17 http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/User:Buncic
18 http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/User:CQuinton
19 http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/User:CarsracBot
20 http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/User:Celestianpower
21 http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/User:Cheonhajangsa

1	Collingwood[22]
2	CommonsDelinker[23]
30	Cost[24]
1	Cspurrier[25]
1	DavidCary[26]
7	Derbeth[27]
1	Dragontamer[28]
7	Eddy264[29]
2	Emortal[30]
1	Erkan Yilmaz[31]
3	Etothex[32]
1	Everlong[33]
1	Furrykef[34]
4	Futachimaru[35]
585	German Men92[36]
1	Goldenburg111[37]
1	Gronau[38]
5	Guanabot[39]
28	Hagindaz[40]
1	Hansm[41]
10	Harrybrowne1986[42]
1	Herr Beethoven[43]
1	HethrirBot[44]
3	Heuler06[45]
7	HolgiDE[46]

22 http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/User:Collingwood
23 http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/User:CommonsDelinker
24 http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/User:Cost
25 http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/User:Cspurrier
26 http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/User:DavidCary
27 http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/User:Derbeth
28 http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/User:Dragontamer
29 http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/User:Eddy264
30 http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/User:Emortal
31 http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/User:Erkan_Yilmaz
32 http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/User:Etothex
33 http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/User:Everlong
34 http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/User:Furrykef
35 http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/User:Futachimaru
36 http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/User:German_Men92
37 http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/User:Goldenburg111
38 http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/User:Gronau
39 http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/User:Guanabot
40 http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/User:Hagindaz
41 http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/User:Hansm
42 http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/User:Harrybrowne1986
43 http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/User:Herr_Beethoven
44 http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/User:HethrirBot
45 http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/User:Heuler06
46 http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/User:HolgiDE

18	Human Robot[47]
4	J36miles[48]
2	JackPotte[49]
3	Jade Knight[50]
1	Jfingers88[51]
16	Jguk[52]
6	Jomegat[53]
1	Junesun[54]
2	Langec[55]
1	Mabdul[56]
1	ManuelGR[57]
195	Marshman[58]
161	Martin Kraus[59]
6	MasterSheep[60]
7	Mastercpp[61]
3	Messi[62]
8	MichaelFrey[63]
1	Michi cc[64]
4	Mike.lifeguard[65]
2	Mjchael[66]
1	Orangehatbrune[67]
2	Panic2k4[68]
1	QuiteUnusual[69]
13	Rappo[70]
9	Recent Runes[71]

47 http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/User:Human_Robot
48 http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/User:J36miles
49 http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/User:JackPotte
50 http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/User:Jade_Knight
51 http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/User:Jfingers88
52 http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/User:Jguk
53 http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/User:Jomegat
54 http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/User:Junesun
55 http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/User:Langec
56 http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/User:Mabdul
57 http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/User:ManuelGR
58 http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/User:Marshman
59 http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/User:Martin_Kraus
60 http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/User:MasterSheep
61 http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/User:Mastercpp
62 http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/User:Messi
63 http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/User:MichaelFrey
64 http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/User:Michi_cc
65 http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/User:Mike.lifeguard
66 http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/User:Mjchael
67 http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/User:Orangehatbrune
68 http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/User:Panic2k4
69 http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/User:QuiteUnusual
70 http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/User:Rappo
71 http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/User:Recent_Runes

1	Red4tribe[72]
191	SamE[73]
1	Savh[74]
1	Schneelocke[75]
15	Shdwninja8[76]
6	Sma[77]
1	Storeye[78]
6	Stuckinkiel[79]
19	Sultanzahir[80]
2	Sundance Raphael[81]
2	Swift[82]
11	TheSun[83]
17	ThomasStrohmann[84]
1	Tlustulimu[85]
1	Van der Hoorn[86]
6	Vulture[87]
2	Webaware[88]
1	Wpollard[89]
4	Xania[90]
1	Yacht[91]
67	Zweifel[92]

72 http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/User:Red4tribe
73 http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/User:SamE
74 http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/User:Savh
75 http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/User:Schneelocke
76 http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/User:Shdwninja8
77 http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/User:Sma
78 http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/User:Storeye
79 http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/User:Stuckinkiel
80 http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/User:Sultanzahir
81 http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/User:Sundance_Raphael
82 http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/User:Swift
83 http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/User:TheSun
84 http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/User:ThomasStrohmann
85 http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/User:Tlustulimu
86 http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/User:Van_der_Hoorn
87 http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/User:Vulture
88 http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/User:Webaware
89 http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/User:Wpollard
90 http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/User:Xania
91 http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/User:Yacht
92 http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/User:Zweifel

List of Figures

- GFDL: Gnu Free Documentation License. `http://www.gnu.org/licenses/fdl.html`

- cc-by-sa-3.0: Creative Commons Attribution ShareAlike 3.0 License. `http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/3.0/`

- cc-by-sa-2.5: Creative Commons Attribution ShareAlike 2.5 License. `http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/2.5/`

- cc-by-sa-2.0: Creative Commons Attribution ShareAlike 2.0 License. `http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/2.0/`

- cc-by-sa-1.0: Creative Commons Attribution ShareAlike 1.0 License. `http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/1.0/`

- cc-by-2.0: Creative Commons Attribution 2.0 License. `http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/2.0/`

- cc-by-2.0: Creative Commons Attribution 2.0 License. `http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/2.0/deed.en`

- cc-by-2.5: Creative Commons Attribution 2.5 License. `http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/2.5/deed.en`

- cc-by-3.0: Creative Commons Attribution 3.0 License. `http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/3.0/deed.en`

- GPL: GNU General Public License. `http://www.gnu.org/licenses/gpl-2.0.txt`

- LGPL: GNU Lesser General Public License. `http://www.gnu.org/licenses/lgpl.html`

- PD: This image is in the public domain.

- ATTR: The copyright holder of this file allows anyone to use it for any purpose, provided that the copyright holder is properly attributed. Redistribution, derivative work, commercial use, and all other use is permitted.

- EURO: This is the common (reverse) face of a euro coin. The copyright on the design of the common face of the euro coins belongs to the European Commission. Authorised is reproduction in a format without relief (drawings, paintings, films) provided they are not detrimental to the image of the euro.

- LFK: Lizenz Freie Kunst. `http://artlibre.org/licence/lal/de`

- CFR: Copyright free use.

- EPL: Eclipse Public License. `http://www.eclipse.org/org/documents/epl-v10.php`

Copies of the GPL, the LGPL as well as a GFDL are included in chapter Licenses[93]. Please note that images in the public domain do not require attribution. You may click on the image numbers in the following table to open the webpage of the images in your webbrower.

---

93   Chapter 94 on page 389

1		
2		
3		
4		
5	Tobias Wolter[94], Tobias Wolter[95]	GFDL
6	A.Savin, BLueFiSH.as, Dabbelju, Jcornelius, MB-one, MGA73bot2, Ralf Roletschek, Roland.h.bueb, Takabeg	
7	AlterVista[96] (talk[97] · contribs[98])	GFDL
8	Original uploader was Fab[99] at de.wikipedia[100] Later version(s) were uploaded by AleXXw[101] at de.wikipedia[102].	
9	User:SKopp[103], User:SKopp[104]	PD
10	Data collected and hosted from: Niko Hofinger	LGPL
11	webmaster of the site	GFDL
12	This version: uploader Base versions this one is derived from: originally created by en:User:Wapcaplet[105]	CC-BY-SA-3.0

---

94 `http:////commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/User:Tobias_Wolter`
95 `http:///wiki/User:Tobias_Wolter`
96 `http:////de.wikipedia.org/wiki/User:AlterVista`
97 `http:////de.wikipedia.org/wiki/User_talk:AlterVista`
98 `http:////de.wikipedia.org/wiki/Special:Contributions/AlterVista`
99 `http:////de.wikipedia.org/wiki/User:Fab`
100 `http://de.wikipedia.org`
101 `http:////de.wikipedia.org/wiki/User:AleXXw`
102 `http://de.wikipedia.org`
103 `http:////commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/User:SKopp`
104 `http:///wiki/User:SKopp`
105 `http:////en.wikipedia.org/wiki/User:Wapcaplet`

94 Licenses

94.1 GNU GENERAL PUBLIC LICENSE

Version 3, 29 June 2007

Copyright © 2007 Free Software Foundation, Inc. <http://fsf.org/>

Everyone is permitted to copy and distribute verbatim copies of this license document, but changing it is not allowed. Preamble

The GNU General Public License is a free, copyleft license for software and other kinds of works.

The licenses for most software and other practical works are designed to take away your freedom to share and change the works. By contrast, the GNU General Public License is intended to guarantee your freedom to share and change all versions of a program--to make sure it remains free software for all its users. We, the Free Software Foundation, use the GNU General Public License for most of our software; it applies also to any other work released this way by its authors. You can apply it to your programs, too.

When we speak of free software, we are referring to freedom, not price. Our General Public Licenses are designed to make sure that you have the freedom to distribute copies of free software (and charge for them if you wish), that you receive source code or can get it if you want it, that you can change the software or use pieces of it in new free programs, and that you know you can do these things.

To protect your rights, we need to prevent others from denying you these rights or asking you to surrender the rights. Therefore, you have certain responsibilities if you distribute copies of the software, or if you modify it: responsibilities to respect the freedom of others.

For example, if you distribute copies of such a program, whether gratis or for a fee, you must pass on to the recipients the same freedoms that you received. You must make sure that they, too, receive or can get the source code. And you must show them these terms so they know their rights.

Developers that use the GNU GPL protect your rights with two steps: (1) assert copyright on the software, and (2) offer you this License giving you legal permission to copy, distribute and/or modify it.

For the developers' and authors' protection, the GPL clearly explains that there is no warranty for this free software. For both users' and authors' sake, the GPL requires that modified versions be marked as changed, so that their problems will not be attributed erroneously to authors of previous versions.

Some devices are designed to deny users access to install or run modified versions of the software inside them, although the manufacturer can do so. This is fundamentally incompatible with the aim of protecting users' freedom to change the software. The systematic pattern of such abuse occurs in the area of products for individuals to use, which is precisely where it is most unacceptable. Therefore, we have designed this version of the GPL to prohibit the practice for those products. If such problems arise substantially in other domains, we stand ready to extend this provision to those domains in future versions of the GPL, as needed to protect the freedom of users.

Finally, every program is threatened constantly by software patents. States should not allow patents to restrict development and use of software on general-purpose computers, but in those that do, we wish to avoid the special danger that patents applied to a free program could make it effectively proprietary. To prevent this, the GPL assures that patents cannot be used to render the program non-free.

The precise terms and conditions for copying, distribution and modification follow. TERMS AND CONDITIONS 0. Definitions.

"This License" refers to version 3 of the GNU General Public License.

"Copyright" also means copyright-like laws that apply to other kinds of works, such as semiconductor masks.

"The Program" refers to any copyrightable work licensed under this License. Each licensee is addressed as "you". "Licensees" and "recipients" may be individuals or organizations.

To "modify" a work means to copy from or adapt all or part of the work in a fashion requiring copyright permission, other than the making of an exact copy. The resulting work is called a "modified version" of the earlier work or a work "based on" the earlier work.

A "covered work" means either the unmodified Program or a work based on the Program.

To "propagate" a work means to do anything with it that, without permission, would make you directly or secondarily liable for infringement under applicable copyright law, except executing it on a computer or modifying a private copy. Propagation includes copying, distribution (with or without modification), making available to the public, and in some countries other activities as well.

To "convey" a work means any kind of propagation that enables other parties to make or receive copies. Mere interaction with a user through a computer network, with no transfer of a copy, is not conveying.

An interactive user interface displays "Appropriate Legal Notices" to the extent that it includes a convenient and prominently visible feature that (1) displays an appropriate copyright notice, and (2) tells the user that there is no warranty for the work (except to the extent that warranties are provided), that licensees may convey the work under this License, and how to view a copy of this License. If the interface presents a list of user commands or options, such as a menu, a prominent item in the list meets this criterion. 1. Source Code.

The "source code" for a work means the preferred form of the work for making modifications to it. "Object code" means any non-source form of a work.

A "Standard Interface" means an interface that either is an official standard defined by a recognized standards body, or, in the case of interfaces specified for a particular programming language, one that is widely used among developers working in that language.

The "System Libraries" of an executable work include anything, other than the work as a whole, that (a) is included in the normal form of packaging a Major Component, but which is not part of that Major Component, and (b) serves only to enable use of the work with that Major Component, or to implement a Standard Interface for which an implementation is available to the public in source code form. A "Major Component", in this context, means a major essential component (kernel, window system, and so on) of the specific operating system (if any) on which the executable work runs, or a compiler used to produce the work, or an object code interpreter used to run it.

The "Corresponding Source" for a work in object code form means all the source code needed to generate, install, and (for an executable work) run the object code and to modify the work, including scripts to control those activities. However, it does not include the work's System Libraries, or general-purpose tools or generally available free programs which are used unmodified in performing those activities but which are not part of the work. For example, Corresponding Source includes interface definition files associated with source files for the work, and the source code for shared libraries and dynamically linked subprograms that the work is specifically designed to require, such as by intimate data communication or control flow between those subprograms and other parts of the work.

The Corresponding Source need not include anything that users can regenerate automatically from other parts of the Corresponding Source.

The Corresponding Source for a work in source code form is that same work. 2. Basic Permissions.

All rights granted under this License are granted for the term of copyright on the Program, and are irrevocable provided the stated conditions are met. This License explicitly affirms your unlimited permission to run the unmodified Program. The output from running a covered work is covered by this License only if the output, given its content, constitutes a covered work. This License acknowledges your rights of fair use or other equivalent, as provided by copyright law.

You may make, run and propagate covered works that you do not convey, without conditions so long as your license otherwise remains in force. You may convey covered works to others for the sole purpose of having them make modifications exclusively for you, or provide you with facilities for running those works, provided that you comply with the terms of this License in conveying all material for which you do not control copyright. Those thus making or running the covered works for you must do so exclusively on your behalf, under your direction and control, on terms that prohibit them from making any copies of your copyrighted material outside their relationship with you.

Conveying under any other circumstances is permitted solely under the conditions stated below. Sublicensing is not allowed; section 10 makes it unnecessary. 3. Protecting Users' Legal Rights From Anti-Circumvention Law.

No covered work shall be deemed part of an effective technological measure under any applicable law fulfilling obligations under article 11 of the WIPO copyright treaty adopted on 20 December 1996, or similar laws prohibiting or restricting circumvention of such measures.

When you convey a covered work, you waive any legal power to forbid circumvention of technological measures to the extent such circumvention is effected by exercising rights under this License with respect to the covered work, and you disclaim any intention to limit operation or modification of the work as a means of enforcing, against the work's users, your or third parties' legal rights to forbid circumvention of technological measures. 4. Conveying Verbatim Copies.

You may convey verbatim copies of the Program's source code as you receive it, in any medium, provided that you conspicuously and appropriately publish on each copy an appropriate copyright notice; keep intact all notices stating that this License and any non-permissive terms added in accord with section 7 apply to the code; keep intact all notices of the absence of any warranty; and give all recipients a copy of this License along with the Program.

You may charge any price or no price for each copy that you convey, and you may offer support or warranty protection for a fee. 5. Conveying Modified Source Versions.

You may convey a work based on the Program, or the modifications to produce it from the Program, in the form of source code under the terms of section 4, provided that you also meet all of these conditions:

* a) The work must carry prominent notices stating that you modified it, and giving a relevant date. * b) The work must carry prominent notices stating that it is released under this License and any conditions added under section 7. This requirement modifies the requirement in section 4 to "keep intact all notices". * c) You must license the entire work, as a whole, under this License to anyone who comes into possession of a copy. This License will therefore apply, along with any applicable section 7 additional terms, to the whole of the work, and all its parts, regardless of how they are packaged. This License gives no permission to license the work in any other way, but it does not invalidate such permission if you have separately received it. * d) If the work has interactive user interfaces, each must display Appropriate Legal Notices; however, if the Program has interactive interfaces that do not display Appropriate Legal Notices, your work need not make them do so.

A compilation of a covered work with other separate and independent works, which are not by their nature extensions of the covered work, and which are not combined with it such as to form a larger program, in or on a volume of a storage or distribution medium, is called an "aggregate" if the compilation and its resulting copyright are not used to limit the access or legal rights of the compilation's users beyond what the individual works permit. Inclusion of a covered work in an aggregate does not cause this License to apply to the other parts of the aggregate. 6. Conveying Non-Source Forms.

You may convey a covered work in object code form under the terms of sections 4 and 5, provided that you also convey the machine-readable Corresponding Source under the terms of this License, in one of these ways:

* a) Convey the object code in, or embodied in, a physical product (including a physical distribution medium), accompanied by the Corresponding Source fixed on a durable physical medium customarily used for software interchange. * b) Convey the object code in, or embodied in, a physical product (including a physical distribution medium), accompanied by a written offer, valid for at least three years and valid for as long as you offer spare parts or customer support for that product model, to give anyone who possesses the object code either (1) a copy of the Corresponding Source for all the software in the product that is covered by this License, on a durable physical medium customarily used for software interchange, for a price no more than your reasonable cost of physically performing this conveying of source, or (2) access to copy the Corresponding Source from a network server at no charge. * c) Convey individual copies of the object code with a copy of the written offer to provide the Corresponding Source. This alternative is allowed only occasionally and noncommercially, and only if you received the object code with such an offer, in accord with subsection 6b. * d) Convey the object code by offering access from a designated place (gratis or for a charge), and offer equivalent access to the Corresponding Source in the same way through the same place at no further charge. You need not require recipients to copy the Corresponding Source along with the object code. If the place to copy the object code is a network server, the Corresponding Source may be on a different server (operated by you or a third party) that supports equivalent copying facilities, provided you maintain clear directions next to the object code saying where to find the Corresponding Source. Regardless of what server hosts the Corresponding Source, you remain obligated to ensure that it is available for as long as needed to satisfy these requirements. * e) Convey the object code using peer-to-peer transmission, provided you inform other peers where the object code and Corresponding Source of the work are being offered to the general public at no charge under subsection 6d.

A separable portion of the object code, whose source code is excluded from the Corresponding Source as a System Library, need not be included in conveying the object code work.

A "User Product" is either (1) a "consumer product", which means any tangible personal property which is normally used for personal, family, or household purposes, or (2) anything designed or sold for incorporation into a dwelling. In determining whether a product is a consumer product, doubtful cases shall be resolved in favor of coverage. For a particular product received by a particular user, "normally used" refers to a typical or common use of that class of product, regardless of the status of the particular user or of the way in which the particular user actually uses, or expects or is expected to use, the product. A product is a consumer product regardless of whether the product has substantial commercial, industrial or non-consumer uses, unless such uses represent the only significant mode of use of the product.

"Installation Information" for a User Product means any methods, procedures, authorization keys, or other information required to install and execute modified versions of a covered work in that User Product from a modified version of its Corresponding Source. The information must suffice to ensure that the continued functioning of the modified object code is in no case prevented or interfered with solely because modification has been made.

If you convey an object code work under this section in, or with, or specifically for use in, a User Product, and the conveying occurs as part of a transaction in which the right of possession and use of the User Product is transferred to the recipient in perpetuity or for a fixed term (regardless of how the transaction is characterized), the Corresponding Source conveyed under this section must be accompanied by the Installation Information. But this requirement does not apply if neither you nor any third party retains the ability to install modified object code on the User Product (for example, the work has been installed in ROM).

The requirement to provide Installation Information does not include a requirement to continue to provide support service, warranty, or updates for a work that has been modified or installed by the recipient, or for the User Product in which it has been modified or installed. Access to a network may be denied when the modification itself materially and adversely affects the operation of the network or violates the rules and protocols for communication across the network.

Corresponding Source conveyed, and Installation Information provided, in accord with this section must be in a format that is publicly documented (and with an implementation available to the public in source code form), and must require no special password or key for unpacking, reading or copying. 7. Additional Terms.

"Additional permissions" are terms that supplement the terms of this License by making exceptions from one or more of its conditions. Additional permissions that are applicable to the entire Program shall be treated as though they were included in this License, to the extent that they are valid under applicable law. If additional permissions apply only to part of the Program, that part may be used separately under those permissions, but the entire Program remains governed by this License without regard to the additional permissions.

When you convey a copy of a covered work, you may at your option remove any additional permissions from that copy, or from any part of it. (Additional permissions may be written to require their own removal in certain cases when you modify the work.) You may place additional permissions on material, added by you to a covered work, for which you have or can give appropriate copyright permission.

Notwithstanding any other provision of this License, for material you add to a covered work, you may (if authorized by the copyright holders of that material) supplement the terms of this License with terms:

* a) Disclaiming warranty or limiting liability differently from the terms of sections 15 and 16 of this License; or * b) Requiring preservation of specified reasonable legal notices or author attributions in that material or in the Appropriate Legal Notices displayed by works containing it; or * c) Prohibiting misrepresentation of the origin of that material, or requiring that modified versions of such material be marked in reasonable ways as different from the original version; or * d) Limiting the use for publicity purposes of names of licensors or authors of the material; or * e) Declining to grant rights under trademark law for use of some trade names, trademarks, or service marks; or * f) Requiring indemnification of licensors and authors of that material by anyone who conveys the material (or modified versions of it) with contractual assumptions of liability to the recipient, for any liability that these contractual assumptions directly impose on those licensors and authors.

All other non-permissive additional terms are considered "further restrictions" within the meaning of section 10. If the Program as you received it, or any part of it, contains a notice stating that it is governed by this License along with a term that is a further restriction, you may remove that term. If a license document contains a further restriction but permits relicensing or conveying under this License, you may add to a covered work material governed by the terms of that license document, provided that the further restriction does not survive such relicensing or conveying.

If you add terms to a covered work in accord with this section, you must place, in the relevant source files, a statement of the additional terms that apply to those files, or a notice indicating where to find the applicable terms.

Additional terms, permissive or non-permissive, may be stated in the form of a separately written license, or stated as exceptions; the above requirements apply either way. 8. Termination.

You may not propagate or modify a covered work except as expressly provided under this License. Any attempt otherwise to propagate or modify it is void, and will automatically terminate your rights under this License (including any patent licenses granted under the third paragraph of section 11).

However, if you cease all violation of this License, then your license from a particular copyright holder is reinstated (a) provisionally, unless and until the copyright holder explicitly and finally terminates your license, and (b) permanently, if the copyright holder fails to notify you of the violation by some reasonable means prior to 60 days after the cessation.

Moreover, your license from a particular copyright holder is reinstated permanently if the copyright holder notifies you of the violation by some reasonable means, this is the first time you have received notice of violation of this License (for any work) from that copyright holder, and you cure the violation prior to 30 days after your receipt of the notice.

Termination of your rights under this section does not terminate the licenses of parties who have received copies or rights from you under this License. If your rights have been terminated and not permanently reinstated, you do not qualify to receive new licenses for the same material under section 10. 9. Acceptance Not Required for Having Copies.

You are not required to accept this License in order to receive or run a copy of the Program. Ancillary propagation of a covered work occurring solely as a consequence of using peer-to-peer transmission to receive a copy likewise does not require acceptance. However, nothing other than this License grants you permission to propagate or modify any covered work. These actions infringe copyright if you do not accept this License. Therefore, by modifying or propagating a covered work, you indicate your acceptance of this License to do so. 10. Automatic Licensing of Downstream Recipients.

Each time you convey a covered work, the recipient automatically receives a license from the original licensors, to run, modify and propagate that work, subject to this License. You are not responsible for enforcing compliance by third parties with this License.

An "entity transaction" is a transaction transferring control of an organization, or substantially all assets of one, or subdividing an organization, or merging organizations. If propagation of a covered work results from an entity transaction, each party to that transaction who receives a copy of the work also receives whatever licenses to the work the party's predecessor in interest had or could give under the previous paragraph, plus a right to possession of the Corresponding Source of the work from the predecessor in interest, if the predecessor has it or can get it with reasonable efforts.

You may not impose any further restrictions on the exercise of the rights granted or affirmed under this License. For example, you may not impose a license fee, royalty, or other charge for exercise of rights granted under this License, and you may not initiate litigation (including a cross-claim or counterclaim in a lawsuit) alleging that any patent claim is infringed by making, using, selling, offering for sale, or importing the Program or any portion of it. 11. Patents.

A "contributor" is a copyright holder who authorizes use under this License of the Program or a work on which the Program is based. The work thus licensed is called the contributor's "contributor version".

A contributor's "essential patent claims" are all patent claims owned or controlled by the contributor, whether already acquired or hereafter acquired, that would be infringed by some manner, permitted by this License, of making, using, or selling its contributor version, but do not include claims that would be infringed only as a consequence of further modification of the contributor version. For purposes of this definition, "control" includes the right to grant patent sublicenses in a manner consistent with the requirements of this License.

Each contributor grants you a non-exclusive, worldwide, royalty-free patent license under the contributor's essential patent claims, to make, use, sell, offer for sale, import and otherwise run, modify and propagate the contents of its contributor version.

In the following three paragraphs, a "patent license" is any express agreement or commitment, however denominated, not to enforce a patent (such as an express permission to practice a patent or covenant not to sue for patent infringement). To "grant" such a patent license to a party means to make such an agreement or commitment not to enforce a patent against the party.

If you convey a covered work, knowingly relying on a patent license, and the Corresponding Source of the work is not available for anyone to copy, free of charge and under the terms of this License, through a publicly available network server or other readily accessible means, then you must either (1) cause the Corresponding Source to be so available, or (2) arrange to deprive yourself of the benefit of the patent license for this particular work, or (3) arrange, in a manner consistent with the requirements of this License, to extend the patent license to downstream recipients. "Knowingly relying" means you have actual knowledge that, but for the patent license, your conveying the covered work in a country, or your recipient's use of the covered work in a country, would infringe one or more identifiable patents in that country that you have reason to believe are valid.

If, pursuant to or in connection with a single transaction or arrangement, you convey, or propagate by procuring conveyance of, a covered work, and grant a patent license to some of the parties receiving the covered work authorizing them to use, propagate, modify or convey a specific copy of the covered work, then the patent license you grant is automatically extended to all recipients of the covered work and works based on it.

A patent license is "discriminatory" if it does not include within the scope of its coverage, prohibits the exercise of, or is conditioned on the non-exercise of one or more of the rights that are specifically granted under this License. You may not convey a covered work if you are a party to an arrangement with a third party that is in the business of distributing software, under which you make payment to the third party based on the extent of your activity of conveying the work, and under which the third party grants, to any of the parties who would receive the covered work from you, a discriminatory patent license (a) in connection with copies of the covered work conveyed by you (or copies made from those copies), or (b) primarily for and in connection with specific products or compilations that contain the covered work, unless you entered into that arrangement, or that patent license was granted, prior to 28 March 2007.

Nothing in this License shall be construed as excluding or limiting any implied license or other defenses to infringement that may otherwise be available to you under applicable patent law. 12. No Surrender of Others' Freedom.

If conditions are imposed on you (whether by court order, agreement or otherwise) that contradict the conditions of this License, they do not excuse you from the conditions of this License. If you cannot convey a covered work so as to satisfy simultaneously your obligations under this License and any other pertinent obligations, then as a consequence you may not convey it at all. For example, if you agree to terms that obligate you to collect a royalty for further conveying from those to whom you convey the Program, the only way you could satisfy

both those terms and this License would be to refrain entirely from conveying the Program. 13. Use with the GNU Affero General Public License.

Notwithstanding any other provision of this License, you have permission to link or combine any covered work with a work licensed under version 3 of the GNU Affero General Public License into a single combined work, and to convey the resulting work. The terms of this License will continue to apply to the part which is the covered work, but the special requirements of the GNU Affero General Public License, section 13, concerning interaction through a network will apply to the combination as such. 14. Revised Versions of this License.

The Free Software Foundation may publish revised and/or new versions of the GNU General Public License from time to time. Such new versions will be similar in spirit to the present version, but may differ in detail to address new problems or concerns.

Each version is given a distinguishing version number. If the Program specifies that a certain numbered version of the GNU General Public License "or any later version" applies to it, you have the option of following the terms and conditions either of that numbered version or of any later version published by the Free Software Foundation. If the Program does not specify a version number of the GNU General Public License, you may choose any version ever published by the Free Software Foundation.

If the Program specifies that a proxy can decide which future versions of the GNU General Public License can be used, that proxy's public statement of acceptance of a version permanently authorizes you to choose that version for the Program.

Later license versions may give you additional or different permissions. However, no additional obligations are imposed on any author or copyright holder as a result of your choosing to follow a later version. 15. Disclaimer of Warranty.

THERE IS NO WARRANTY FOR THE PROGRAM, TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW. EXCEPT WHEN OTHERWISE STATED IN WRITING THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND/OR OTHER PARTIES PROVIDE THE PROGRAM "AS IS" WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO THE QUALITY AND PERFORMANCE OF THE PROGRAM IS WITH YOU. SHOULD THE PROGRAM PROVE DEFECTIVE, YOU ASSUME THE COST OF ALL NECESSARY SERVICING, REPAIR OR CORRECTION. 16. Limitation of Liability.

IN NO EVENT UNLESS REQUIRED BY APPLICABLE LAW OR AGREED TO IN WRITING WILL ANY COPYRIGHT HOLDER, OR ANY OTHER PARTY WHO MODIFIES AND/OR CONVEYS THE PROGRAM AS PERMITTED ABOVE, BE LIABLE TO YOU FOR DAMAGES, INCLUDING ANY GENERAL, SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF THE USE OR INABILITY TO USE THE PROGRAM (INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO LOSS OF DATA OR DATA BEING RENDERED INACCURATE OR LOSSES SUSTAINED BY YOU OR THIRD PARTIES OR A FAILURE OF THE PROGRAM TO OPERATE WITH ANY OTHER PROGRAMS), EVEN IF SUCH HOLDER OR OTHER PARTY HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. 17. Interpretation of Sections 15 and 16.

If the disclaimer of warranty and limitation of liability provided above cannot be given local legal effect according to their terms, reviewing courts shall apply local law that most closely approximates an absolute waiver of all civil liability in connection with the Program, unless a warranty or assumption of liability accompanies a copy of the Program in return for a fee.

END OF TERMS AND CONDITIONS How to Apply These Terms to Your New Programs

If you develop a new program, and you want it to be of the greatest possible use to the public, the best way to achieve this is to make it free software which everyone can redistribute and change under these terms.

To do so, attach the following notices to the program. It is safest to attach them to the start of each source file to most effectively state the exclusion of warranty; and each file should have at least the "copyright" line and a pointer to where the full notice is found.

<one line to give the program's name and a brief idea of what it does.> Copyright (C) <year> <name of author>

This program is free software: you can redistribute it and/or modify it under the terms of the GNU General Public License as published by the Free Software Foundation, either version 3 of the License, or (at your option) any later version.

This program is distributed in the hope that it will be useful, but WITHOUT ANY WARRANTY; without even the implied warranty of MERCHANTABILITY or FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. See the GNU General Public License for more details.

You should have received a copy of the GNU General Public License along with this program. If not, see <http://www.gnu.org/licenses/>.

Also add information on how to contact you by electronic and paper mail.

If the program does terminal interaction, make it output a short notice like this when it starts in an interactive mode:

<program> Copyright (C) <year> <name of author> This program comes with ABSOLUTELY NO WARRANTY; for details type `show w'. This is free software, and you are welcome to redistribute it under certain conditions; type `show c' for details.

The hypothetical commands `show w' and `show c' should show the appropriate parts of the General Public License. Of course, your program's commands might be different; for a GUI interface, you would use an "about box".

You should also get your employer (if you work as a programmer) or school, if any, to sign a "copyright disclaimer" for the program, if necessary. For more information on this, and how to apply and follow the GNU GPL, see <http://www.gnu.org/licenses/>.

The GNU General Public License does not permit incorporating your program into proprietary programs. If your program is a subroutine library, you may consider it more useful to permit linking proprietary applications with the library. If this is what you want to do, use the GNU Lesser General Public License instead of this License. But first, please read <http://www.gnu.org/philosophy/why-not-lgpl.html>.

94.2 GNU Free Documentation License

Version 1.3, 3 November 2008

Copyright © 2000, 2001, 2002, 2007, 2008 Free Software Foundation, Inc. <http://fsf.org/>

Everyone is permitted to copy and distribute verbatim copies of this license document, but changing it is not allowed. 0. PREAMBLE

The purpose of this License is to make a manual, textbook, or other functional and useful document "free" in the sense of freedom: to assure everyone the effective freedom to copy and redistribute it, with or without modifying it, either commercially or noncommercially. Secondarily, this License preserves for the author and publisher a way to get credit for their work, while not being considered responsible for modifications made by others.

This License is a kind of "copyleft", which means that derivative works of the document must themselves be free in the same sense. It complements the GNU General Public License, which is a copyleft license designed for free software.

We have designed this License in order to use it for manuals for free software, because free software needs free documentation: a free program should come with manuals providing the same freedoms that the software does. But this License is not limited to software manuals; it can be used for any textual work, regardless of subject matter or whether it is published as a printed book. We recommend this License principally for works whose purpose is instruction or reference. 1. APPLICABILITY AND DEFINITIONS

This License applies to any manual or other work, in any medium, that contains a notice placed by the copyright holder saying it can be distributed under the terms of this License. Such a notice grants a world-wide, royalty-free license, unlimited in duration, to use that work under the conditions stated herein. The "Document", below, refers to any such manual or work. Any member of the public is a licensee, and is addressed as "you". You accept the license if you copy, modify or distribute the work in a way requiring permission under copyright law.

A "Modified Version" of the Document means any work containing the Document or a portion of it, either copied verbatim, or with modifications and/or translated into another language.

A "Secondary Section" is a named appendix or a front-matter section of the Document that deals exclusively with the relationship of the publishers or authors of the Document to the Document's overall subject (or to related matters) and contains nothing that could fall directly within that overall subject. (Thus, if the Document is in part a textbook of mathematics, a Secondary Section may not explain any mathematics.) The relationship could be a matter of historical connection with the subject or with related matters, or of legal, commercial, philosophical, ethical or political position regarding them.

The "Invariant Sections" are certain Secondary Sections whose titles are designated, as being those of Invariant Sections, in the notice that says that the Document is released under this License. If a section does not fit the above definition of Secondary then it is not allowed to be designated as Invariant. The Document may contain zero Invariant Sections. If the Document does not identify any Invariant Sections then there are none.

The "Cover Texts" are certain short passages of text that are listed, as Front-Cover Texts or Back-Cover Texts, in the notice that says that the Document is released under this License. A Front-Cover Text may be at most 5 words, and a Back-Cover Text may be at most 25 words.

A "Transparent" copy of the Document means a machine-readable copy, represented in a format whose specification is available to the general public, that is suitable for revising the document straightforwardly with generic text editors or (for images composed of pixels) generic paint programs or (for drawings) some widely available drawing editor, and that is suitable for input to text formatters or for automatic translation to a variety of formats suitable for input to text formatters. A copy made in an otherwise Transparent file format whose markup, or absence of markup, has been arranged to thwart or discourage subsequent modification by readers is not Transparent. An image format is not Transparent if used for any substantial amount of text. A copy that is not "Transparent" is called "Opaque".

Examples of suitable formats for Transparent copies include plain ASCII without markup, Texinfo input format, LaTeX input format, SGML or XML using a publicly available DTD, and standard-conforming simple HTML, PostScript or PDF designed for human modification. Examples of transparent image formats include PNG, XCF and JPG. Opaque formats include proprietary formats that can be read and edited only by proprietary word processors, SGML or XML for which the DTD and/or processing tools are not generally available, and the machine-generated HTML, PostScript or PDF produced by some word processors for output purposes only.

The "Title Page" means, for a printed book, the title page itself, plus such following pages as are needed to hold, legibly, the material this License requires to appear in the title page. For works in formats which do not have any title page as such, "Title Page" means the text near the most prominent appearance of the work's title, preceding the beginning of the body of the text.

The "publisher" means any person or entity that distributes copies of the Document to the public.

A section "Entitled XYZ" means a named subunit of the Document whose title either is precisely XYZ or contains XYZ in parentheses following text that translates XYZ in another language. (Here XYZ stands for a specific section name mentioned below, such as "Acknowledgements", "Dedications", "Endorsements", or "History".) To "Preserve the Title" of such a section when you modify the Document means that it remains a section "Entitled XYZ" according to this definition.

The Document may include Warranty Disclaimers next to the notice which states that this License applies to the Document. These Warranty Disclaimers are considered to be included by reference in this License, but only as regards disclaiming warranties: any other implication that these Warranty Disclaimers may have is void and has no effect on the meaning of this License. 2. VERBATIM COPYING

You may copy and distribute the Document in any medium, either commercially or noncommercially, provided that this License, the copyright notices, and the license notice saying this License applies to the Document are reproduced in all copies, and that you add no other conditions whatsoever to those of this License. You may not use technical measures to obstruct or control the reading or further copying of the copies you make or distribute. However, you may accept compensation in exchange for copies. If you distribute a large enough number of copies you must also follow the conditions in section 3.

You may also lend copies, under the same conditions stated above, and you may publicly display copies. 3. COPYING IN QUANTITY

If you publish printed copies (or copies in media that commonly have printed covers) of the Document, numbering more than 100, and the Document's license notice requires Cover Texts, you must enclose the copies in covers that carry, clearly and legibly, all these Cover Texts: Front-Cover Texts on the front cover, and Back-Cover Texts on the back cover. Both covers must also clearly and legibly identify you as the publisher of these copies. The front cover must present the full title with all words of the title equally prominent and visible. You may add other material on the covers in addition. Copying with changes limited to the covers, as long as they preserve the title of the Document and satisfy these conditions, can be treated as verbatim copying in other respects.

If the required texts for either cover are too voluminous to fit legibly, you should put the first ones listed (as many as fit reasonably) on the actual cover, and continue the rest onto adjacent pages.

If you publish or distribute Opaque copies of the Document numbering more than 100, you must either include a machine-readable Transparent copy along with each Opaque copy, or state in or with each Opaque copy a computer-network location from which the general network-using public has access to download using public-standard network protocols a complete Transparent copy of the Document, free of added material. If you use the latter option, you must take reasonably prudent steps, when you begin distribution of Opaque copies in quantity, to ensure that this Transparent copy will remain thus accessible at the stated location until at least one year after the last time you distribute an Opaque copy (directly or through your agents or retailers) of that edition to the public.

It is requested, but not required, that you contact the authors of the Document well before redistributing any large number of copies, to give them a chance to provide you with an updated version of the Document. 4. MODIFICATIONS

You may copy and distribute a Modified Version of the Document under the conditions of sections 2 and 3 above, provided that you release the Modified Version under precisely this License, with the Modified Version filling the role of the Document, thus licensing distribution and modification of the Modified Version to whoever possesses a copy of it. In addition, you must do these things in the Modified Version:

* A. Use in the Title Page (and on the covers, if any) a title distinct from that of the Document, and from those of previous versions (which should, if there were any, be listed in the History section of the Document). You may use the same title as a previous version if the original publisher of that version gives permission. * B. List on the Title Page, as authors, one or more persons or entities responsible for authorship of the modifications in the Modified Version, together with at least five of the principal authors of the Document (all of its principal authors, if it has fewer than five), unless they release you from this requirement. * C. State on the Title page the name of the publisher of the Modified Version, as the publisher. * D. Preserve all the copyright notices of the Document. * E. Add an appropriate copyright notice for your modifications adjacent to the other copyright notices. * F. Include, immediately after the copyright notices, a license notice giving the public permission to use the Modified Version under the terms of this License, in the form shown in the Addendum below. * G. Preserve in that license notice the full lists of Invariant Sections and required Cover Texts given in the Document's license notice. * H. Include an unaltered copy of this License. * I. Preserve the section Entitled "History", Preserve its Title, and add to it an item stating at least the title, year, new authors, and publisher of the Modified Version as given on the Title Page. If there is no section Entitled "History" in the Document, create one stating the title, year, authors, and publisher of the Document as given on its Title Page, then add an item describing the Modified Version as stated in the previous sentence. * J. Preserve the network location, if any, given in the Document for public access to a Transparent copy of the Document, and likewise the network locations given in the Document for previous versions it was based on. These may be placed in the "History" section. You may omit a network location for a work that was published at least four years before the Document itself, or if the original publisher of the version it refers to gives permission. * K. For any section Entitled "Acknowledgements" or "Dedications", Preserve the Title of the section, and preserve in the section all the substance and tone of each of the contributor acknowledgements and/or dedications given therein. * L. Preserve all the Invariant Sections of the Document, unaltered in their text and in their titles. Section numbers or the equivalent are not considered part of the section titles. * M. Delete any section Entitled "Endorsements". Such a section may not be included in the Modified Version. * N. Do not retitle any existing section to be Entitled "Endorsements" or to conflict in title with any Invariant Section. * O. Preserve any Warranty Disclaimers.

If the Modified Version includes new front-matter sections or appendices that qualify as Secondary Sections and contain no material copied from the Document, you may at your option designate some or all of these sections as invariant. To do this, add their titles to the list of Invariant Sections in the Modified Version's license notice. These titles must be distinct from any other section titles.

You may add a section Entitled "Endorsements", provided it contains nothing but endorsements of your Modified Version by various parties—for example, statements of peer review or that the text has been approved by an organization as the authoritative definition of a standard.

You may add a passage of up to five words as a Front-Cover Text, and a passage of up to 25 words as a Back-Cover Text, to the end of the list of Cover Texts in the Modified Version. Only one passage of Front-Cover Text and one of Back-Cover Text may be added by (or through arrangements made by) any one entity. If the Document already includes a cover text for the same cover, previously added by you or by arrangement made by the same entity you are acting on behalf of, you may not add another; but you may replace the old one, on explicit permission from the previous publisher that added the old one.

The author(s) and publisher(s) of the Document do not by this License give permission to use their names for publicity for or to assert or imply endorsement of any Modified Version. 5. COMBINING DOCUMENTS

You may combine the Document with other documents released under this License, under the terms defined in section 4 above for modified versions, provided that you include in the combination all of the Invariant Sections of all of the original documents, unmodified, and list them all as Invariant Sections of your combined work in its license notice, and that you preserve all their Warranty Disclaimers.

The combined work need only contain one copy of this License, and multiple identical Invariant Sections may be replaced with a single copy. If there are multiple Invariant Sections with the same name but different contents, make the title of each such section unique by adding at the end of it, in parentheses, the name of the original author or publisher of that section if known, or else a unique number. Make the same adjustment to the section titles in the list of Invariant Sections in the license notice of the combined work.

In the combination, you must combine any sections Entitled "History" in the various original documents, forming one section Entitled "History"; likewise combine any sections Entitled "Acknowledgements", and any sections Entitled "Dedications". You must delete all sections Entitled "Endorsements". 6. COLLECTIONS OF DOCUMENTS

You may make a collection consisting of the Document and other documents released under this License, and replace the individual copies of this License in the various documents with a single copy that is included in the collection, provided that you follow the rules of this License for verbatim copying of each of the documents in all other respects.

You may extract a single document from such a collection, and distribute it individually under this License, provided you insert a copy of this License into the extracted document, and follow this License in all other respects regarding verbatim copying of that document. 7. AGGREGATION WITH INDEPENDENT WORKS

A compilation of the Document or its derivatives with other separate and independent documents or works, in or on a volume of a storage or distribution medium, is called an "aggregate" if the copyright resulting from the compilation is not used to limit the legal rights of the compilation's users beyond what the individual works permit. When the Document is included in an aggregate, this License does not apply to the other works in the aggregate which are not themselves derivative works of the Document.

If the Cover Text requirement of section 3 is applicable to these copies of the Document, then if the Document is less than one half of the entire aggregate, the Document's Cover Texts may be placed on covers that bracket the Document within the aggregate, or the electronic equivalent of covers if the Document is in electronic form. Otherwise they must appear on printed covers that bracket the whole aggregate. 8. TRANSLATION

Translation is considered a kind of modification, so you may distribute translations of the Document under the terms of section 4. Replacing Invariant Sections with translations requires special permission from their copyright holders, but you may include translations of some or all Invariant Sections in addition to the original versions of these Invariant Sections. You may include a translation of this License, and all the license notices in the Document, and any Warranty Disclaimers, provided that you also include the original English version of this License and the original versions of those notices and disclaimers. In case of a disagreement between the translation and the original version of this License or a notice or disclaimer, the original version will prevail.

If a section in the Document is Entitled "Acknowledgements", "Dedications", or "History", the requirement (section 4) to Preserve its Title (section 1) will typically require changing the actual title. 9. TERMINATION

You may not copy, modify, sublicense, or distribute the Document except as expressly provided under this License. Any attempt otherwise to copy, modify, sublicense, or distribute it is void, and will automatically terminate your rights under this License.

However, if you cease all violation of this License, then your license from a particular copyright holder is reinstated (a) provisionally, unless and until the copyright holder explicitly and finally terminates your license, and (b) permanently, if the copyright holder fails to notify you of the violation by some reasonable means prior to 60 days after the cessation.

Moreover, your license from a particular copyright holder is reinstated permanently if the copyright holder notifies you of the violation by some reasonable means, this is the first time you have received notice of violation of this License (for any work) from that copyright holder, and you cure the violation prior to 30 days after your receipt of the notice.

Termination of your rights under this section does not terminate the licenses of parties who have received copies or rights from you under this License. If your rights have been terminated and not permanently reinstated, receipt of a copy of some or all of the same material does not give you any rights to use it. 10. FUTURE REVISIONS OF THIS LICENSE

The Free Software Foundation may publish new, revised versions of the GNU Free Documentation License from time to time. Such new versions will be similar in spirit to the present version, but may differ in detail to address new problems or concerns. See http://www.gnu.org/copyleft/.

Each version of the License is given a distinguishing version number. If the Document specifies that a particular numbered version of this License "or any later version" applies to it, you have the option of following the terms and conditions either of that specified version or of any later version that has been published (not as a draft) by the Free Software Foundation. If the Document does not specify a version number of this License, you may choose any version ever published (not as a draft) by the Free Software Foundation. If the Document specifies that a proxy can decide which future versions of this License can be used, that proxy's public statement of acceptance of a version permanently authorizes you to choose that version for the Document. 11. RELICENSING

"Massive Multiauthor Collaboration Site" (or "MMC Site") means any World Wide Web server that publishes copyrightable works and also provides prominent facilities for anybody to edit those works. A public wiki that anybody can edit is an example of such a server. A "Massive Multiauthor Collaboration" (or "MMC") contained in the site means any set of copyrightable works thus published on the MMC site.

"CC-BY-SA" means the Creative Commons Attribution-Share Alike 3.0 license published by Creative Commons Corporation, a not-for-profit corporation with a principal place of business in San Francisco, California, as well as future copyleft versions of that license published by that same organization.

"Incorporate" means to publish or republish a Document, in whole or in part, as part of another Document.

An MMC is "eligible for relicensing" if it is licensed under this License, and if all works that were first published under this License somewhere other than this MMC, and subsequently incorporated in whole or in part into the MMC, (1) had no cover texts or invariant sections, and (2) were thus incorporated prior to November 1, 2008.

The operator of an MMC Site may republish an MMC contained in the site under CC-BY-SA on the same site at any time before August 1, 2009, provided the MMC is eligible for relicensing. ADDENDUM: How to use this License for your documents

To use this License in a document you have written, include a copy of the License in the document and put the following copyright and license notices just after the title page:

Copyright (C) YEAR YOUR NAME. Permission is granted to copy, distribute and/or modify this document under the terms of the GNU Free Documentation License, Version 1.3 or any later version published by the Free Software Foundation; with no Invariant Sections, no Front-Cover Texts, and no Back-Cover Texts. A copy of the license is included in the section entitled "GNU Free Documentation License".

If you have Invariant Sections, Front-Cover Texts and Back-Cover Texts, replace the "with ... Texts." line with this:

with the Invariant Sections being LIST THEIR TITLES, with the Front-Cover Texts being LIST, and with the Back-Cover Texts being LIST.

If you have Invariant Sections without Cover Texts, or some other combination of the three, merge those two alternatives to suit the situation.

If your document contains nontrivial examples of program code, we recommend releasing these examples in parallel under your choice of free software license, such as the GNU General Public License, to permit their use in free software.

94.3 GNU Lesser General Public License

GNU LESSER GENERAL PUBLIC LICENSE

Version 3, 29 June 2007

Copyright © 2007 Free Software Foundation, Inc. <http://fsf.org/>

Everyone is permitted to copy and distribute verbatim copies of this license document, but changing it is not allowed.

This version of the GNU Lesser General Public License incorporates the terms and conditions of version 3 of the GNU General Public License, supplemented by the additional permissions listed below. 0. Additional Definitions.

As used herein, "this License" refers to version 3 of the GNU Lesser General Public License, and the "GNU GPL" refers to version 3 of the GNU General Public License.

"The Library" refers to a covered work governed by this License, other than an Application or a Combined Work as defined below.

An "Application" is any work that makes use of an interface provided by the Library, but which is not otherwise based on the Library. Defining a subclass of a class defined by the Library is deemed a mode of using an interface provided by the Library.

A "Combined Work" is a work produced by combining or linking an Application with the Library. The particular version of the Library with which the Combined Work was made is also called the "Linked Version".

The "Minimal Corresponding Source" for a Combined Work means the Corresponding Source for the Combined Work, excluding any source code for portions of the Combined Work that, considered in isolation, are based on the Application, and not on the Linked Version.

The "Corresponding Application Code" for a Combined Work means the object code and/or source code for the Application, including any data and utility programs needed for reproducing the Combined Work from the Application, but excluding the System Libraries of the Combined Work. 1. Exception to Section 3 of the GNU GPL.

You may convey a covered work under sections 3 and 4 of this License without being bound by section 3 of the GNU GPL. 2. Conveying Modified Versions.

If you modify a copy of the Library, and, in your modifications, a facility refers to a function or data to be supplied by an Application that uses the facility (other than as an argument passed when the facility is invoked), then you may convey a copy of the modified version:

* a) under this License, provided that you make a good faith effort to ensure that, in the event an Application does not supply the function or data, the facility still operates, and performs whatever part of its purpose remains meaningful, or * b) under the GNU GPL, with none of the additional permissions of this License applicable to that copy.

3. Object Code Incorporating Material from Library Header Files.

The object code form of an Application may incorporate material from a header file that is part of the Library. You may convey such object code under terms of your choice, provided that, if the incorporated material is not limited to numerical parameters, data structure layouts and accessors, or small macros, inline functions and templates (ten or fewer lines in length), you do both of the following:

* a) Give prominent notice with each copy of the object code that the Library is used in it and that the Library and its use are covered by this License. * b) Accompany the object code with a copy of the GNU GPL and this license document.

4. Combined Works.

You may convey a Combined Work under terms of your choice that, taken together, effectively do not restrict modification of the portions of the Library contained in the Combined Work and reverse engineering for debugging such modifications, if you also do each of the following:

* a) Give prominent notice with each copy of the Combined Work that the Library is used in it and that the Library and its use are covered by this License. * b) Accompany the Combined Work with a copy of the GNU GPL and this license document. * c) For a Combined Work that displays copyright notices during execution, include the copyright notice for the Library among these notices, as well as a reference directing the user to the copies of the GNU GPL and this license document. * d) Do one of the following: o 0) Convey the Minimal Corresponding Source under the terms of this License, and the Corresponding Application Code in a form suitable for, and under terms that permit, the user to recombine or relink the Application with a modified version of the Linked Version to produce a modified Combined Work, in the manner specified by section 6 of the GNU GPL for conveying Corresponding Source. o 1) Use a suitable shared library mechanism for linking with the Library. A suitable mechanism is one that (a) uses at run time a copy of the Library already present on the user's computer system, and (b) will operate properly with a modified version of the Library that is interface-compatible with the Linked Version. * e) Provide Installation Information, but only if you would otherwise be required to provide such information under section 6 of the GNU GPL, and only to the extent that such information is necessary to install and execute a modified version of the Combined Work produced by recombining or relinking the Application with a modified version of the Linked Version. (If you use option 4d0, the Installation Information must accompany the Minimal Corresponding Source and Corresponding Application Code. If you use option 4d1, you must provide the Installation Information in the manner specified by section 6 of the GNU GPL for conveying Corresponding Source.)

5. Combined Libraries.

You may place library facilities that are a work based on the Library side by side in a single library together with other library facilities that are not Applications and are not covered by this License, and convey such a combined library under terms of your choice, if you do both of the following:

* a) Accompany the combined library with a copy of the same work based on the Library, uncombined with any other library facilities, conveyed under the terms of this License. * b) Give prominent notice with the combined library that part of it is a work based on the Library, and explaining where to find the accompanying uncombined form of the same work.

6. Revised Versions of the GNU Lesser General Public License.

The Free Software Foundation may publish revised and/or new versions of the GNU Lesser General Public License from time to time. Such new versions will be similar in spirit to the present version, but may differ in detail to address new problems or concerns.

Each version is given a distinguishing version number. If the Library as you received it specifies that a certain numbered version of the GNU Lesser General Public License "or any later version" applies to it, you have the option of following the terms and conditions either of that published version or of any later version published by the Free Software Foundation. If the Library as you received it does not specify a version number of the GNU Lesser General Public License, you may choose any version of the GNU Lesser General Public License ever published by the Free Software Foundation.

If the Library as you received it specifies that a proxy can decide whether future versions of the GNU Lesser General Public License shall apply, that proxy's public statement of acceptance of any version is permanent authorization for you to choose that version for the Library.